

# FORD **FOCUS** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2014

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3568en 03/2014 20140310091139

# Table of Contents

## Introduction

About This Manual.....	7
Symbols Glossary.....	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	9

## At a Glance

At a Glance.....	11
------------------	----

## Child Safety

Child Seats.....	18
Child Seat Positioning.....	19
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	22
Child Safety Locks.....	23

## Occupant protection

Principle of Operation.....	25
Fastening the safety belts.....	26
Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	27
Belt Minder.....	27
Using safety belts during pregnancy.....	28
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	28

## Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	30
Programming the remote control.....	30
Changing the remote control battery.....	30

## Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	33
Keyless Entry.....	35

## Door Edge Protection

Principle of Operation.....	38
-----------------------------	----

## Alarm

Principle of Operation.....	39
Arming the alarm.....	40

Disarming the alarm.....	40
--------------------------	----

## Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	41
Audio Control.....	41
Voice Control.....	42

## Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	43
Autowipers.....	43
Windshield Washers.....	44
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	44
Headlamp Washers.....	45
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	45
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	45

## Lighting

General Information.....	48
Lighting Control.....	48
Autolamps.....	49
Automatic High Beam Control.....	50
Front Fog Lamps.....	51
Rear Fog Lamps.....	52
Headlamp Leveling.....	52
Cornering Lamps.....	53
Direction Indicators.....	53
Interior Lamps.....	54
Ambient Lighting.....	54
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	55
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	55
Removing a Headlamp.....	55
Changing a Bulb.....	56
Bulb Specification Chart.....	63

## Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	65
Global Opening and Closing.....	66
Exterior Mirrors.....	67
Power exterior mirrors.....	68

# Table of Contents

Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	69
Blind Spot Information System.....	69

## Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	72
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	74
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	77

## Information Displays

General Information.....	79
Trip Computer.....	85
Personalized Settings.....	85
Information Messages.....	86

## Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	98
Air Vents.....	98
Manual Climate Control.....	99
Automatic Climate Control.....	101
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	103
Auxiliary Heater.....	103
Power moon roof.....	106

## Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	108
Head Restraints.....	108
Manual Seats.....	109
Power Seats - Vehicles With: 6-Way Power Seats.....	111
Power Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way Power Seats.....	112
Rear Seats.....	113
Heated Seats.....	114

## Convenience features

Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	116
Clock.....	116
Cigar Lighter.....	116
Auxiliary Power Points.....	116
Cup Holders.....	117

Glasses Holder.....	117
Audio Input Jack.....	117
USB Port.....	117
Satellite Navigation Unit Holder.....	118

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	119
Ignition Switch.....	119
Keyless Starting.....	119
Steering Wheel Lock.....	121
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	121
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	121
Starting a Gasoline Engine - E85.....	122
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	123
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	123
Switching Off the Engine.....	124
Engine Block Heater.....	124

## Auto-Start-Stop

Principle of Operation.....	126
Using start-stop.....	126

## Eco Mode

Principle of Operation.....	128
Using Eco mode.....	128

## Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	129
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	129
Fuel Quality - E85.....	129
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	129
Catalytic Converter.....	130
Refueling.....	130
Refueling - E85.....	130
Fuel Consumption.....	130
Fuel filler door.....	131
Technical Specifications.....	133

# Table of Contents

## Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	135
Automatic Transmission.....	135

## Brakes

Principle of Operation.....	138
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	138
Parking Brake.....	138

## Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	139
Using Stability Control - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (M14), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	140
Using Stability Control - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	140

## Hill Start Assist

Principle of Operation.....	141
Using hill start assist.....	141

## Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	143
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid.....	143
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Front and Rear Parking Aid.....	144

## Rear view camera

Principle of Operation.....	147
Rear View Camera.....	147

## Active Park Assist

Principle of Operation.....	150
Using active park assist.....	150

## Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	153
Using Cruise Control.....	153

## Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Principle of Operation.....	155
Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	157
Forward alert function.....	159

## Speed Limiter

Principle of Operation.....	160
Using the speed limiter.....	160

## Driver Alert

Principle of Operation.....	161
Using driver alert.....	161

## Lane Departure Warning

Principle of Operation.....	163
Using lane departure warning.....	163

## Lane Keeping Aid

Principle of Operation.....	165
Using the lane keeping aid.....	165

## Active City Stop

Principle of Operation.....	167
Using Active City Stop - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (M14), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	168
Using Active City Stop - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	168

## Driving Aids

Traffic Sign Recognition.....	169
-------------------------------	-----

## Load Carrying

General Information.....	171
Luggage Anchor Points.....	171
Cargo Nets.....	171
Luggage Covers.....	172
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	173
Dog Guard.....	175

# Table of Contents

## Towing

Towing a Trailer - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (M14), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	177
Towing a Trailer - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	178
Tow Ball.....	178
Retractable tow ball.....	181

## Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	184
Cold Weather Precautions.....	184
Driving Through Water.....	184
Floor Mats.....	184

## Roadside Emergencies

First Aid Kit.....	186
Warning Triangle.....	186
Fuel Shutoff.....	186

## Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....	187
Fuse Specification Chart.....	188
Changing a Fuse.....	195

## Vehicle recovery

Towing Points.....	196
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels.....	196

## Maintenance

General Information.....	198
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	198
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	200
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V (Sigma).....	201
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	202
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	203
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratec-HE (M14).....	204

Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Diesel.....	206
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Diesel.....	207
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V (Sigma).....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratec-HE (M14).....	209
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	209
Engine Oil Check.....	209
Engine Coolant Check.....	210
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	210
Washer Fluid Check.....	211
Technical Specifications.....	211

## Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	215
Cleaning the Interior.....	216
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	216

## Vehicle battery

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	217
Changing the 12V Battery.....	218
Battery connection points.....	218

## Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	219
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	219
Tire Care.....	223
Using Winter Tires.....	223
Using Snow Chains - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (M14), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	223
Using Snow Chains - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	224
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	224

# Table of Contents

---

Changing a Road Wheel.....	225
Technical Specifications.....	231

## **Vehicle identification**

Vehicle Identification Plate.....	236
Vehicle Identification Number.....	237

## **Capacities and Specifications**

Technical Specifications.....	238
-------------------------------	-----

## **Navigation**

Navigation.....	243
-----------------	-----

## **Audio introduction**

Important audio information.....	252
----------------------------------	-----

## **Audio unit overview**

Audio unit overview .....	253
---------------------------	-----

## **Audio System Security**

Security code.....	261
--------------------	-----

## **Audio unit operation**

On/off control.....	262
Sound button.....	262
Waveband button.....	262
Station tuning control.....	262
Station preset buttons.....	263
Autostore control.....	263
Traffic information control.....	263

## **Audio unit menus**

Automatic volume control.....	265
Digital signal processing (DSP).....	265
News broadcasts.....	265
Alternative frequencies.....	265
Regional mode (REG).....	266

## **Compact Disc Player**

Compact disc playback.....	267
Track selection.....	267
Fast forward/reverse.....	267
Shuffle/random.....	267
Repeat compact disc tracks.....	267
Compact disc track scanning.....	268
MP3 file playback.....	268
MP3 display options.....	268
Ending compact disc playback.....	269

## **Auxiliary input jack**

Auxiliary input jack.....	270
---------------------------	-----

## **Audio Troubleshooting**

Audio troubleshooting.....	271
----------------------------	-----

## **SYNC™**

General Information.....	272
Using Voice Recognition.....	273
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	276
SYNC™ Applications and Services.....	287
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	294
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	300

## **Appendices**

Electromagnetic compatibility.....	308
End User License Agreement.....	309
Type approvals.....	324
Type approvals.....	324
Type approvals.....	324
Type approvals.....	324
Type approvals.....	325
Type approvals.....	325
Type approvals.....	325



# Introduction

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about it, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

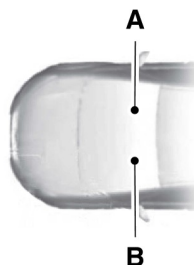
**Note:** This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to your vehicle.

**Note:** Some of the illustrations in this manual may be used for different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle. However, the essential information in the illustrations is always correct.

**Note:** Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

**Note:** Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

- A Right-hand side
- B Left-hand side

## Protecting the Environment

You must play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

## SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



Air conditioning system



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery

# Introduction



Battery acid



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten safety belt



Front airbag



Front fog lamps



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard warning flashers



Heated rear window



Heated windshield



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low tire pressure warning

# Introduction

---



Maintain correct fluid level



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking brake



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Service engine soon



Side airbag



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Windshield wash and wipe

## REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

Your vehicle has been built to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

## Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

## Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

# Introduction

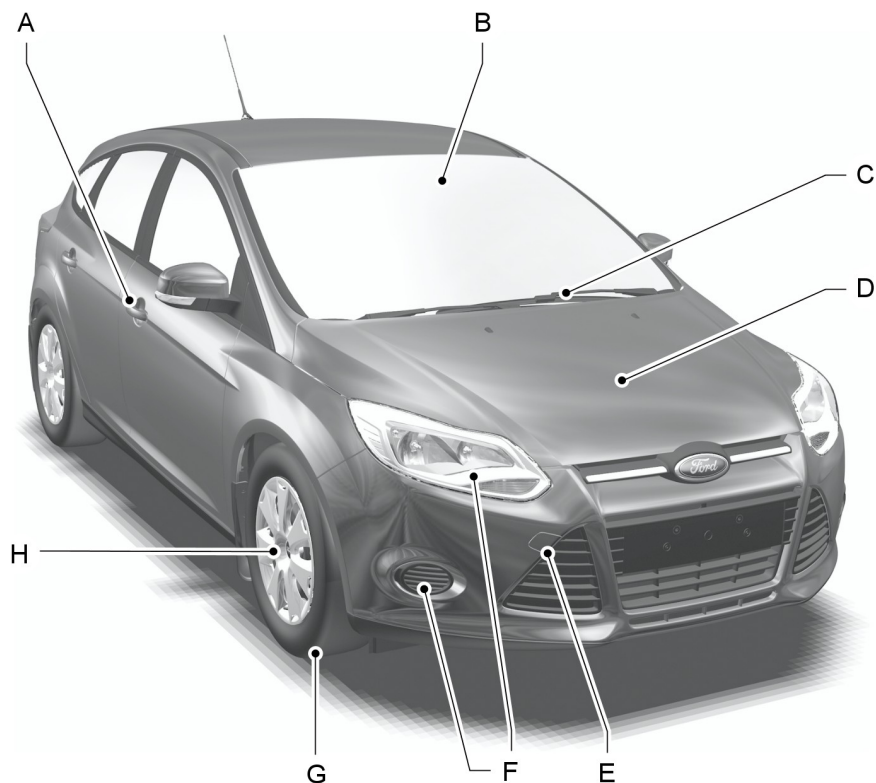
---

## **Warranty on Replacement Parts**

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. Damage caused to your vehicle as a result of the failure of non-Ford parts may not be covered by the Ford Warranty. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

# At a Glance

## Front exterior overview



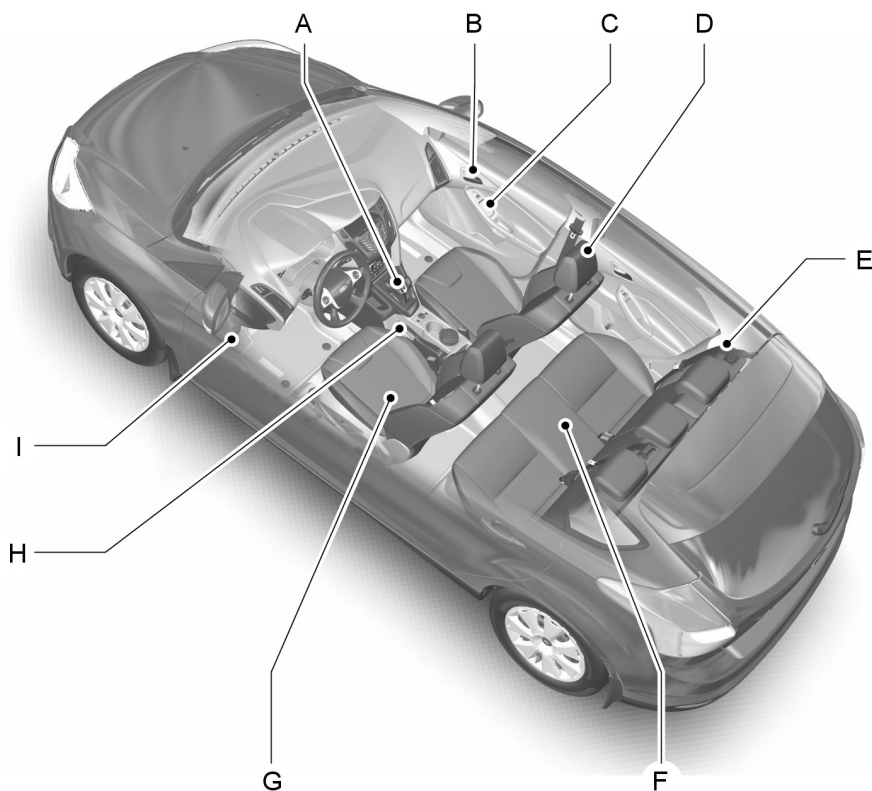
E133220

- A See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 33). See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).
- B See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 50). See **Driver Alert** (page 161). See **Lane Departure Warning** (page 163). See **Lane Keeping Aid** (page 165). See **Driving Aids** (page 169). See **Active City Stop** (page 167).
- C See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 45).
- D See **Maintenance** (page 198).
- E See **Towing Points** (page 196).

# At a Glance

- F See **Changing a Bulb** (page 56).
- G Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).
- H See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 225).

## Vehicle interior overview



E133222

- A See **Transmission** (page 135).
- B See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 33).
- C See **Power Windows** (page 65). See **Power exterior mirrors** (page 68).

# At a Glance

- D See **Head Restraints** (page 108).
- E See **Fastening the safety belts** (page 26).
- F See **Rear Seats** (page 113).
- G See **Manual Seats** (page 109). See **Power Seats** (page 111).
- H See **Parking Brake** (page 138).
- I See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 198).

## Instrument panel overview

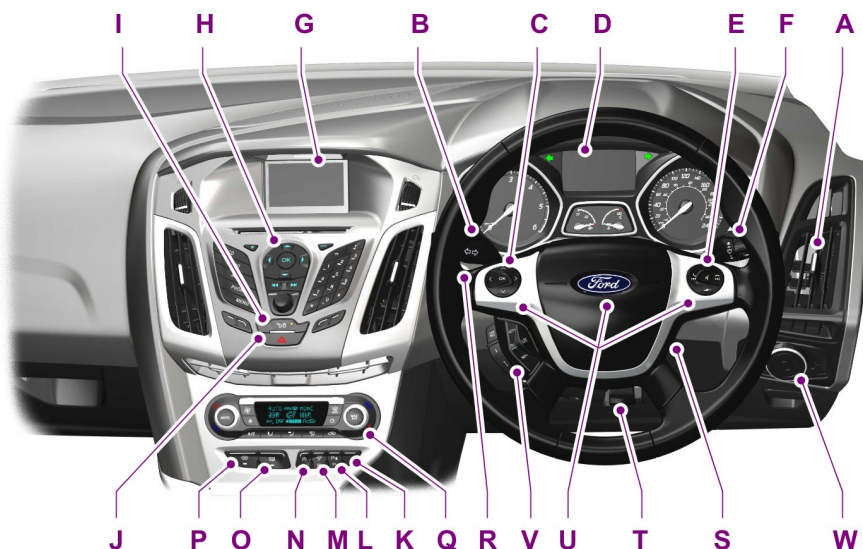
### Left-hand drive



E164754

# At a Glance

## Right-hand drive



E164755

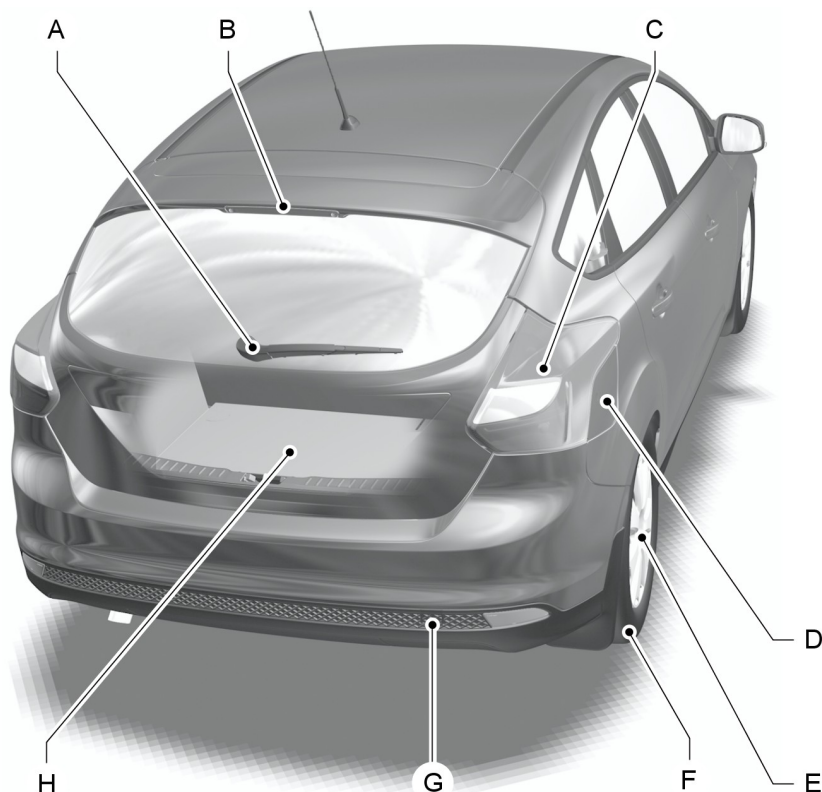
- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 98).
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 53). High beam. See **Lighting Control** (page 48).
- C Information display control. See **Information Displays** (page 79).
- D Instrument cluster. See **Gauges** (page 72). See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).
- E Audio control. See **Audio Control** (page 41). Voice control. See **Voice Control** (page 42). Telephone control. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276).
- F Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 43).
- G Information and entertainment display.
- H Audio unit. See **Audio unit overview** (page 253).
- I Door lock button. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 33).
- J Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Warning Flashers** (page 55).
- K Stability control switch. See **Using Stability Control** (page 140).

## At a Glance

- L Parking aid switch. See **Parking Aids** (page 143).
- M Active park assist switch. See **Active Park Assist** (page 150).
- N Start-stop switch. See **Using start-stop** (page 126).
- O Heated rear window switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 103).
- P Heated windshield switch. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 103).
- Q Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 98).
- R Start button. See **Keyless Starting** (page 119).
- S Ignition switch. See **Ignition Switch** (page 119).
- T Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 41).
- U Horn.
- V Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 153). Adaptive cruise control (ACC) switches. See **Using Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 157). Speed limiter switches. See **Using the speed limiter** (page 160).
- W Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 48). Front fog lamps. See **Front Fog Lamps** (page 51). Rear fog lamp. See **Rear Fog Lamps** (page 52). Headlamp leveling control. See **Headlamp Leveling** (page 52). Instrument lighting dimmer. See **Instrument Lighting Dimmer** (page 116).

# At a Glance

## Rear exterior overview



E133221

- A See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 45).
- B See **Changing a Bulb** (page 56).
- C See **Changing a Bulb** (page 56).
- D See **Fuel filler door** (page 131).
- E See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 225).
- F Tire pressures. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

## At a Glance

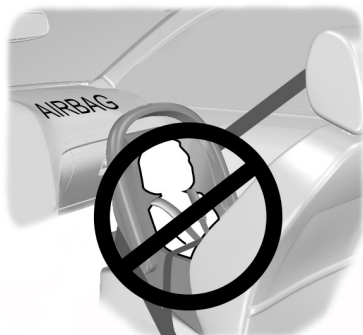
- G See **Towing Points** (page 196).
- H See **First Aid Kit** (page 186). See **Warning Triangle** (page 186). See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 219). Spare wheel. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 225). Jack. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 225). Wheel brace. See **Changing a Road Wheel** (page 225). Towing eye. See **Towing Points** (page 196). Fuel funnel. See **Fuel filler door** (page 131).

# Child Safety

## CHILD SEATS








E133140





E68916

### WARNINGS

-  Secure children that are less than 150 centimeters (59 inches) tall in a suitable, approved child restraint, in the rear seat.
-  Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a child restraint.
-  Do not modify child restraints in any way.
-  Do not hold a child on your lap when the vehicle is moving.

### WARNINGS

-  Do not leave unattended children in your vehicle.
-  If your vehicle has been involved in an accident, have the child restraints checked by properly trained technicians.

**Note:** *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle. A choice of these are available from your Dealer.

### Child restraints for different mass groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

#### Baby safety seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.

# Child Safety

## Child safety seat



E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

### WARNINGS



Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

### WARNINGS



Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



When using a child seat with a support leg, the support leg must rest securely on the floor.



When using a child seat with a safety belt, make sure that the safety belt is not slack or twisted.

### CAUTION



The child seat must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 108).

**Note:** When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat to its fully rearwards position. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat. See **Seats** (page 108).

# Child Safety

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)	Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)	15 - 25 kg (33 - 55 lbs)	22 - 36 kg (49 - 79 lbs)
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>ON</b>	X	X	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>	UF <sup>1</sup>
Front passenger seat with airbag <b>OFF</b>	U	U	U	U	U
Rear seats	U	U	U	U	U

**X** Not suitable for children in this mass group.

**U** Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

**UF<sup>1</sup>** Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group. However, we recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, in the rear seat.

## ISOFIX child seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		0+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)
Front seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	C, D, E*	A, B, B1, C, D*
	Seat type	IL <sup>2</sup>	IL, IUF <sup>3</sup>

# Child Safety

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		O+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)
Rear center seat	Size class	Not ISOFIX equipped	
	Seat type		

**IL** Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the **semi-universal** category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

**IUF** Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of **universal** category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

<sup>1</sup>The ISOFIX size class for both **universal** and **semi-universal** child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters **A** to **G**. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.


<sup>2</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group O+ ISOFIX baby safety seat is the Britax Roemer Baby Safe. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

<sup>3</sup>At time of publishing the recommended Group 1 ISOFIX child seat is the Britax Roemer Duo. Please consult your Dealer for the latest details relating to Ford recommended child seats.

# Child Safety

## ISOFIX ANCHOR POINTS

### WARNING

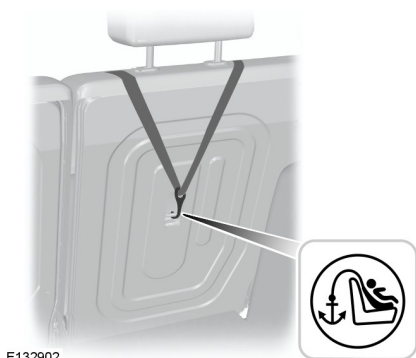
 Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

**Note:** When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Seat Positioning** (page 19).

Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

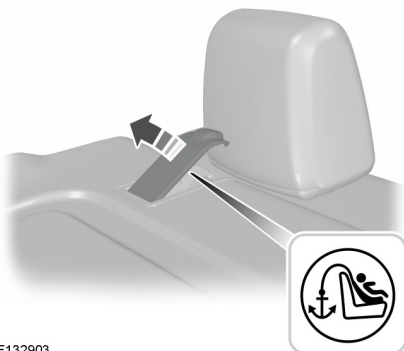
The ISOFIX system comprises of two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points may also be fitted.

### Top tether anchor points - 5-door and wagon



E132902

### Top tether anchor points - 4 door




E132903

The tether anchor points are located under a flap.


### Attaching a child seat with top tethers

### WARNING

 Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

**Note:** Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 172).

### WARNING

 Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.

# Child Safety



E87145

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

### WARNING



You cannot open the doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.

### Manual child safety locks

**Note:** On vehicles with keyless entry, use the spare key. See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).



E78298

### Left-hand side

Turn counterclockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

### Right-hand side

Turn clockwise to lock and counterclockwise to unlock.

### Electric child safety locks

**Note:** Pressing the switch will also disable the rear power window switches.

# Child Safety

---



E124779

# Occupant protection

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Airbags

#### WARNINGS



Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags.



Extreme Hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!



Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 108).



Have repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and safety belts carried out by a properly trained technician.



Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers.



Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags.

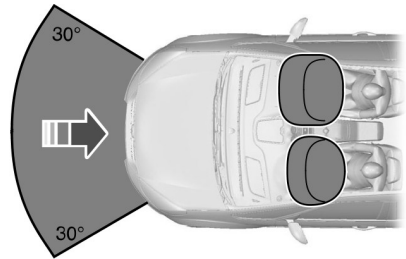


Use seat covers designed for seats with side airbags. Have these fitted by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

**Note:** Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.

### Front airbags



E74302

The driver airbag, front passenger airbag and the front safety belt pretensioners will deploy during significant frontal collisions or collisions that are up to 30 degrees from the left or the right. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the driver and front passenger airbags will not deploy.

### Side and curtain airbags

During significant lateral collisions, only the airbags on the side affected by the collision and the front safety belt pretensioners will deploy. The airbags will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing protection for the body. The side and curtain airbags will not deploy during minor lateral collisions, front collisions, rear collisions or overturns.

# Occupant protection

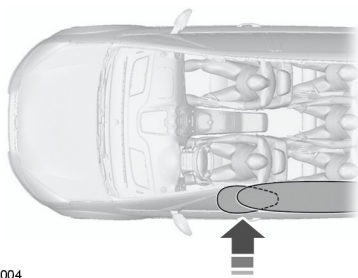
## Side airbags



E72658

Side airbags are fitted inside the seatback of the front seats. A label indicates that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

## Curtain airbags



E75004






Curtain airbags are fitted inside the trim panels over the front and rear side windows. Moulded badges in the B-pillar trim panels indicate that curtain airbags are fitted to your vehicle.

## Safety belts

### WARNINGS

 Wear a safety belt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position to achieve its optimum effect. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 108).



### WARNINGS

-  Never use a safety belt for more than one person.
-  Use the correct buckle for each safety belt.
-  Do not use a safety belt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not wear thick clothing. The safety belt must fit tightly around your body to achieve its optimum effect.
-  Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the centre of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

The driver and front passenger safety belt systems are fitted with a safety belt pretensioner. Safety belt pretensioners have a lower deployment threshold than the airbags. During minor collisions, it is possible that only the safety belt pretensioners will deploy.


### Status after a collision

### WARNINGS

-  Safety belts subjected to strain, as a result of an accident, should be renewed and the anchorages checked by a properly trained technician.
-  If a safety belt pretensioner has been deployed the safety belt must be renewed.

## FASTENING THE SAFETY BELTS

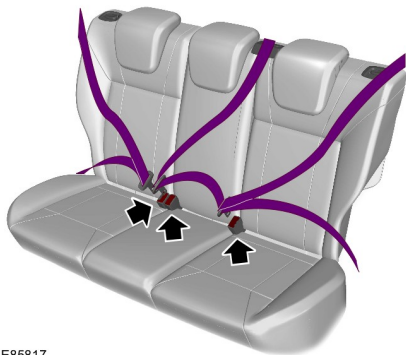
### WARNING

-  Insert the tongue into the buckle until you hear a distinct click. You have not fastened the safety belt properly if you do not hear a click.

# Occupant protection



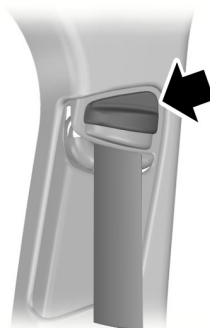
E74124



E85817

Pull the belt out steadily. It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope. Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Let it retract completely and smoothly.

## SAFETY BELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT



E87511

**Note:** *Lifting the slider slightly while pressing the locking button makes it easier to release the locking mechanism.*

To raise or lower, press the locking button on the adjuster and move as necessary.

## BELT MINDER

### WARNING



The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt properly.



The safety belt minder warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound if the driver's or front seat passenger's safety belt has not been fastened and the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed. It will also illuminate if the driver's or front seat passenger's

## Occupant protection

safety belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving. The audible warning will go off after a few minutes but the safety belt minder warning lamp will remain on until the driver's or front seat passenger's safety belt is fastened.

### Rear safety belt minder

#### WARNING



If multiple belts are unfastened within a few seconds of each other, only one audible chime will sound.

**Note:** Press the **OK** button on the steering wheel control to confirm the message.

A visual reminder of the safety belt status will be shown on the instrument display once the engine is started, and once again if any are unfastened when the vehicle is moving.

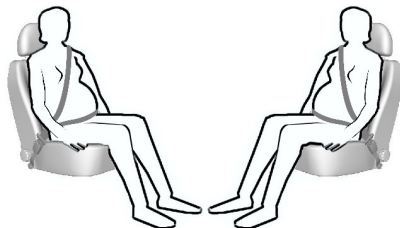
Fastened safety belts are indicated by a tick symbol.

If a belt is unfastened when the vehicle is moving, the safety belt status screen will be displayed and the relevant seats will be highlighted by an exclamation mark. An audible chime will also sound.

### Deactivating the safety belt minder

See your dealer.

## USING SAFETY BELTS DURING PREGNANCY



E68587

#### WARNING



Position the safety belt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Position the lap strap comfortably across your hips and low beneath your pregnant abdomen. Position the shoulder strap between your breasts, above and to the side of your pregnant abdomen.

## DISABLING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG

#### WARNING



Make sure that the passenger airbag is disabled when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.


# Occupant protection



E71313

## Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch

### WARNING

 If you need to fit a child restraint on a seat protected by an operational airbag in front of it, have a passenger airbag deactivation switch fitted. Ask your dealer for further information.

**Note:** The key switch is located in the glove compartment with an airbag deactivation lamp in the overhead console.

If the airbag warning lamp illuminates or flashes when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74). Remove the child restraint and have the system checked immediately.

## Disabling the passenger airbag



E71312


- A Disabled
- B Enabled

Turn the switch to position **A**.

When you switch the ignition on, check that the passenger airbag deactivation warning lamp illuminates.

## Enabling the passenger airbag

### WARNING

 Make sure that the passenger airbag is enabled when you are **not** using a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

Turn the switch to position **B**.

# Keys and Remote Controls

## GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

### CAUTIONS

**!** The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions (e.g. amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems). If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

**!** Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended. This will safeguard against any potential malicious frequency blocking.

**Note:** You could unlock the doors if you press the buttons on the remote control unintentionally.

The operating range between your remote control and your vehicle varies depending on the environment.

## PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can program a maximum of eight remote controls to use with your vehicle (including any supplied with your vehicle).

### Programming a new remote control

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Cycle the key from position **0** to **II** and then back to **0** four times within six seconds.
3. Leave the key in position **0** and press any button on the remote control within 10 seconds. You will receive confirmation via a chime or LED that programming has been successful.

**Note:** Further remote controls may be programmed at this stage.

4. Press any button on each additional remote control within 10 seconds of each other.

### Reprogramming the unlocking function

**Note:** When you press the unlock button either all the doors are unlocked or only the driver's door is unlocked. Pressing the unlock button again unlocks all the doors.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote key simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators will flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

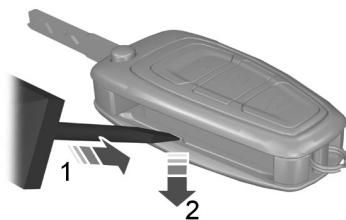
## CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority regarding recycling.

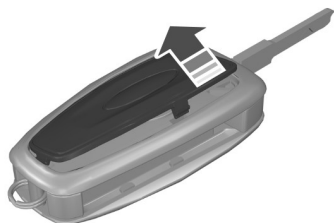
### Remote control with a folding key blade



E128809

# Keys and Remote Controls

1. Insert a screwdriver in the position shown and gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



E128810

3. Carefully remove the cover.



E128811

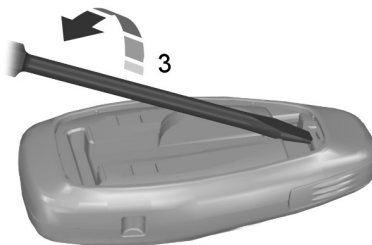
4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.
5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.
6. Replace the battery cover.

## Remote control without a folding key blade



E87964

1. Press and hold the pushbuttons on the edges to release the cover. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade.



E105362

3. Twist a flat bladed screwdriver in the position shown to separate the two halves of the remote control.

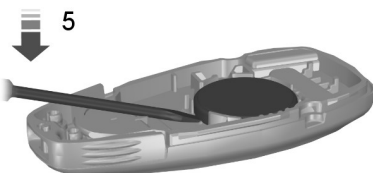
## Keys and Remote Controls

---



E119190

4. Carefully insert the screwdriver in the position shown to open the remote control.



E125860

### CAUTION



Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Carefully prise out the battery with the screwdriver.
6. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing downwards.
7. Assemble the two halves of the remote control.
8. Install the key blade.

# Locks

## LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

### CAUTION



Check your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

**Note:** Do not leave your keys in the vehicle.

### Locking

#### Locking with the key

Turn the top of the key towards the front of the vehicle.

#### Locking with the remote control

**Note:** The driver's door can be locked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** Your vehicle can be locked with a rear door open. The door will be locked when it is closed.



Press the button.

#### Double locking

### WARNING



Do not activate double locking when persons or animals are inside the vehicle. You will not be able to unlock the doors from the inside if you have double locked them.

**Note:** If you double lock your vehicle whilst inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.

**Note:** Your vehicle can be double locked with a rear door open. The door will be double locked when it is closed.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

#### Double locking with the key

Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds.

#### Double locking with the remote control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

### Unlocking

#### Unlocking with the key

Turn the top of the key towards the rear of the vehicle.

#### Unlocking with the remote control

**Note:** The driver's door can be unlocked with the key. This needs to be used if the remote control is not functioning.

**Note:** If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the remote control will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting the vehicle once will enable the remote control.



Press the button.

#### Automatic relocking

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door, the luggage compartment lid, or turn on the ignition within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The doors lock and the alarm will return to its previous state.

#### Reprogramming the unlocking function

The unlocking function may be reprogrammed so that only the driver's door is unlocked ( See **Programming the remote control** (page 30). ).

# Locks

## Locking and unlocking confirmation

**Note:** If your vehicle has double locking, the direction indicators will flash once after you have activated central locking, followed by two further flashes after double locking.

When you lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

When you double lock the doors, the direction indicators will flash three times.

When you unlock the doors, the direction indicators will flash once.

## Locking and unlocking the doors from inside



Press the button. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

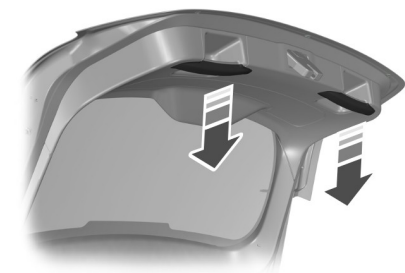
## Luggage compartment lid

### Opening the luggage compartment lid with the remote control



Press the button twice within three seconds.

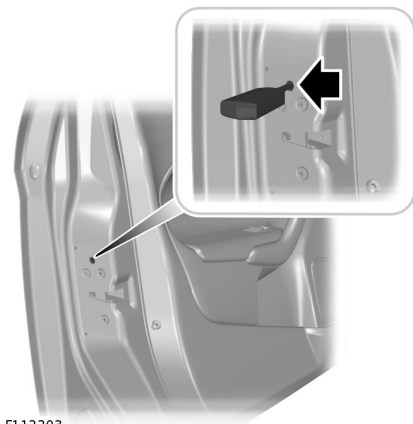
### Closing the luggage compartment lid



E133536

## Locking the doors individually with the key

**Note:** If the central locking function fails to operate, the doors can be individually locked using the key in the position shown.



E112203

### Left-hand side

Turn clockwise to lock.

### Right-hand side

Turn counterclockwise to lock.

## Unlocking

**Note:** If the child safety locks have also been activated, pulling the internal lever will only deactivate the emergency locking and not the child safety lock. The doors can only be opened using the external door handle.

**Note:** If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.

Unlock the driver's door using the key. The other doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

# Locks

## KEYLESS ENTRY

### General information

#### WARNING



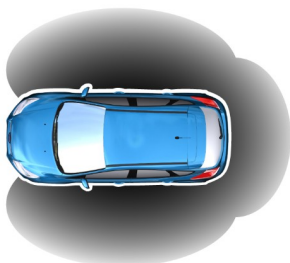
The keyless entry system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

The passive entry system will not function if:

- The vehicle battery is flat.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

**Note:** If the passive entry system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

The keyless system allows the driver to operate the vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.



E78276

Passive locking and unlocking requires a valid passive key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately one and a half meters from the driver and front passenger door handles and the luggage compartment lid.

### Passive key

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked with the passive key. The passive key can also be used as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 33).

### Locking the vehicle

#### WARNING

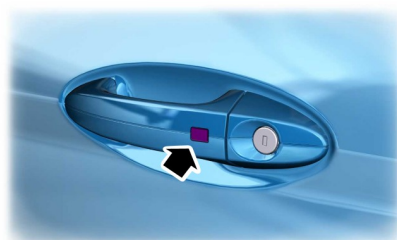


The vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If the locking function is not activated, the vehicle will remain unlocked.

**Note:** The ignition will automatically switch off when you lock your vehicle from the outside. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** Do not grab the door handle.

**Note:** Keep the door handle surface clean to make sure the system operates correctly.



E87384

Touch a front door handle lock sensor to lock the vehicle.

To activate central locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor once.

To activate double locking and arm the alarm:

- Touch a front door handle lock sensor twice within three seconds.

# Locks

**Note:** *There must be clearance between each touch of the door handle.*

**Note:** *Once activated, the vehicle will remain locked for a few seconds. When the delay period is over, the doors can be opened again, provided the passive key is within the respective detection range.*

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been locked and that the alarm has been armed.

## Luggage compartment lid

**Note:** *The luggage compartment lid cannot be closed and, will pop back up if the passive key is located inside the vehicle with the doors locked.*

**Note:** *If a second valid passive key is located within the rear exterior detection range, the luggage compartment lid can be closed.*

## Unlocking the vehicle

**Note:** *If the vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the keyless system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of the vehicle battery. When the vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. Unlocking the vehicle once will deactivate the energy-saving mode.*

**Note:** *If the vehicle remains locked for several weeks, the keyless system will be disabled. The vehicle must be unlocked using the key blade. Unlocking the vehicle once will enable the keyless system.*

**Note:** *Do not touch the front door handle lock sensor when opening a door.*



E78278

Open any door.

**Note:** *A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.*

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and the luggage compartment lid have been unlocked and that the alarm has been disarmed.

## Unlocking only the driver's door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver's door and the luggage compartment lid are unlocked ( See **Programming the remote control** (page 30). ), note the following:

If the driver's door is the first door which is opened, the other doors will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside the vehicle by pressing the unlock button on the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11). Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

## Disabled keys

Any keys left inside the vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

A disabled key cannot be used to turn the ignition on or start the engine.

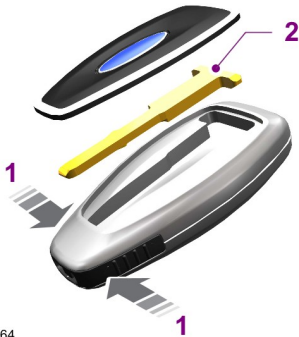
In order to use these passive keys again, they have to be enabled.

# Locks

To enable all your passive keys, unlock the vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All passive keys will then be enabled if the ignition is turned on or the vehicle is started using a valid key.

## Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade



E87964

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

**Note:** Only the driver's door handle is fitted with a lock cylinder.

# Door Edge Protection

---

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**Note:** *The protective flap may be moved gently out of position when the door is open to allow access for cleaning. Make sure that the flap is repositioned correctly otherwise the flap may not retract when you attempt to close the door.*

**Note:** *Keep the door edges free from obstructions such as heavy dirt and snow or ice.*

The front and rear doors have a retractable plastic flap that will move into position when you open a door. The flap will protect the door edge from damage that may be caused by contact with other objects and obstacles.

If the door edge protector does not move freely or becomes stuck, do not attempt to move it. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

# Alarm

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Alarm system

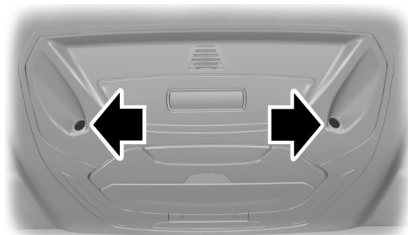
Your vehicle may be equipped with one of the following alarm systems:

- Perimeter alarm.
- Perimeter alarm with interior sensors.
- Category one alarm with interior sensors and battery back-up sounder.

### Perimeter alarm

The perimeter alarm is a deterrent against unauthorized access to your vehicle through the doors and the hood. It also protects the audio unit.

### Interior sensors



E129005

### WARNING



The sensors in the interior lamp unit must not be covered up. Do not activate the alarm with full guard if any persons, animals or other moving objects are inside the vehicle.

The sensors act as a deterrent against unauthorized intrusion by sensing any movement within the vehicle.

### Battery back-up sounder

The battery back-up sounder is an extra alarm system which will sound a siren when the alarm is triggered. It is armed directly when you lock the vehicle. The sounder has its own battery and will sound an alarm siren even if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

### Triggering the alarm

Once armed, the alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the tailgate or the hood without a valid key or remote control.
- If someone removes the audio or navigation system.
- If the ignition is turned to position **I**, **II** or **III** without a valid key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement within the vehicle.
- On vehicles with a battery back-up sounder, if someone disconnects the vehicle battery or the battery back-up sounder itself.

If the alarm is triggered, the alarm horn will sound for 30 seconds and the hazard warning flasher will flash for five minutes.

Any further attempts to perform one of the above will trigger the alarm again.

### Full and reduced guard

#### Full guard

Full guard is the standard setting.

In full guard, the interior sensors are activated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** *This may result in false alarms if animals or moving objects are inside the vehicle.*

# Alarm

**Note:** False alarms can also be triggered by the auxiliary heater. See **Auxiliary Heater** (page 103). If you are using the auxiliary heater, direct the air flow towards the footwell.

## Reduced guard

In reduced guard, the interior sensors are deactivated when you arm the alarm.

**Note:** You can set the alarm to reduced guard for the current ignition cycle only. The next time you switch on the ignition, the alarm will be reset to full guard.

## Ask on Exit

You can set the information display to ask you each time which level of guard you wish to set.

If you select **Ask on Exit**, the message **Reduced guard?** appears in the instrument cluster display each time you switch the ignition off.

If you wish to arm the alarm with reduced guard, press the **OK** button when this message appears.

If you wish to arm the alarm with full guard, leave the vehicle without pressing the **OK** button.

## Selecting full or reduced guard

**Note:** Selecting **Reduced** does not set the alarm permanently to reduced guard. It sets it to reduced guard only for the current ignition cycle. If you regularly set the alarm to reduced guard, select **Ask on Exit**.

You can select full or reduced guard using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

## Information messages

See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## ARMING THE ALARM

To arm the alarm, lock the vehicle. See **Locks** (page 33).

## DISARMING THE ALARM

### Vehicles without keyless entry

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors with the key and switching the ignition on with a correctly coded key within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

### Vehicles with keyless entry

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door for keyless entry. See **Keyless Entry** (page 35).

#### Perimeter alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

#### Category one alarm

Disarm and silence the alarm by unlocking the doors and switching the ignition on within 12 seconds, or unlocking the doors or the luggage compartment lid with the remote control.

# Steering Wheel

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

### WARNING

 Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

**Note:** Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 108).




E95178



E95179

### WARNING

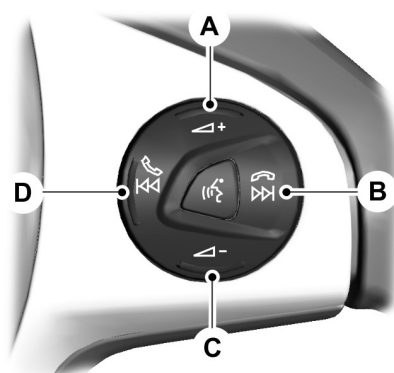
 Make sure that you fully engage the locking lever when returning it to its original position.

## AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

### Type 1

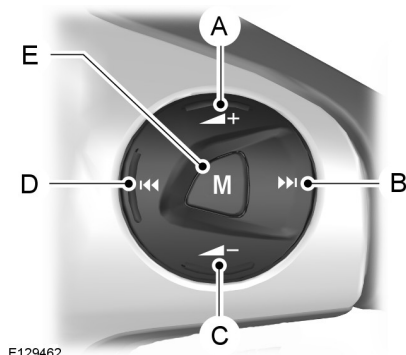


E159789

- A Volume up
- B Seek up, next or end call
- C Volume down
- D Seek down, previous or accept call

# Steering Wheel

## Type 2



- A Volume up
- B Seek up or next
- C Volume down
- D Seek down or previous
- E Mode

Press **M** to select the audio source.

## Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset
- play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band
- seek through a track.

## VOICE CONTROL

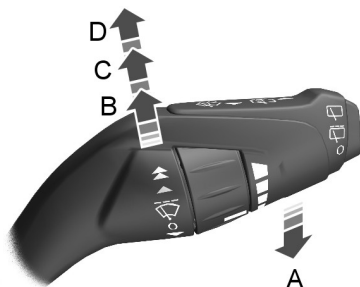


E159531

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **SYNC™** (page 272).

# Wipers and Washers

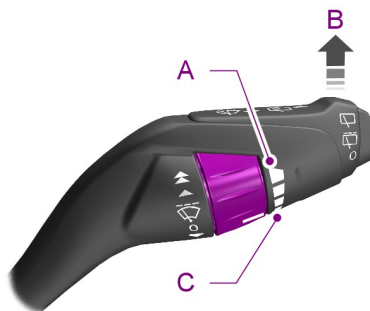
## WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E128444

- A Single wipe
- B Intermittent wipe or autowipers
- C Normal wipe
- D High speed wipe

## Intermittent wipe



E128445

- A Short wipe interval
- B Intermittent wipe
- C Long wipe interval

The rotary control can be used to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

## Automatic wiper system

Some models without autowipers are fitted with a speed-dependent front windshield wiper system.

When the vehicle is slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the wiper speed will automatically switch to the next lower wiper speed setting.

When the vehicle speed is increased, the wiper speed will return to the manually-chosen setting.

Moving the wiper lever when the system is operating will switch off the system.

If the vehicle is again slowed to walking speed or is brought to a standstill, the system is reactivated.

## AUTOWIPERS

### CAUTIONS

❗ Do not switch autowipers on in dry weather conditions. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

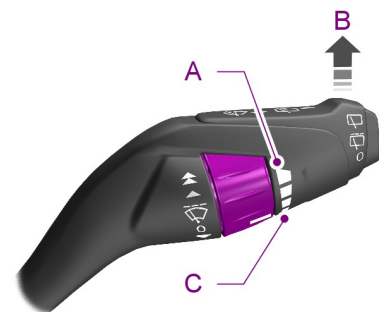
❗ Replace the wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears. If you do not replace them, the rain sensor will continue to detect water on the windshield and the wipers will operate, even though the majority of the windshield is dry.

❗ Fully defrost the windshield in icy conditions before you switch autowipers on.

❗ Switch autowipers off before you enter a car wash.

**Note:** If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.

# Wipers and Washers



E128445

- A High sensitivity
- B On
- C Low sensitivity

If you switch autowipers on, the wipers will not cycle until water is detected on the windshield. The rain sensor will then continuously measure the amount of water on the windshield and adjust the speed of the wipers automatically.

Adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor using the rotary control. With low sensitivity, the wipers will operate when the sensor detects a lot of water on the windshield. With high sensitivity, the wipers will operate if the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

## WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E129188

### WARNING



Do not operate the washer for more than 10 seconds at a time, and never when the reservoir is empty.

Whilst the lever is pulled towards the steering wheel the washer will work in conjunction with the wipers.

After releasing the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

## REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

### Intermittent wipe



E129193

- A Intermittent wipe
- B Low speed wipe

Press the button at the end of the lever to change between off, intermittent and low speed.

### Reverse gear wipe

The rear wiper will be activated automatically when selecting reverse gear if the rear wiper is not already switched on and the front wiper is operating.

# Wipers and Washers

## Rear window washer



E129194

### WARNING



Do not operate the washer for more than 10 seconds at a time, and never when the reservoir is empty.

While the lever is pushed away from the steering wheel the washer will work in conjunction with the wipers.

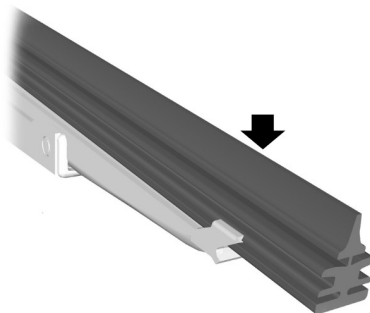
After releasing the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

## HEADLAMP WASHERS

The headlamp washers will operate with the windshield washers when the headlamps are on.

**Note:** To stop the washer fluid reservoir emptying quickly, the headlamp washers will not operate every time that you use the windshield washers.

## CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E66644

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Clean the wiper blade lips with water applied with a soft sponge.

## CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

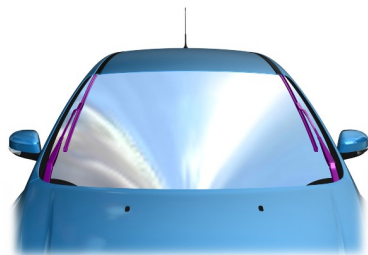
### Changing the Wiper Blades

**Note:** Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield. See **Cleaning the Exterior** (page 215).

**Note:** Install new wiper blades as soon as they begin to leave bands of water and smears on the windscreen.

# Wipers and Washers

## Service Position



E75184

Set the windshield wipers in the service position to change the wiper blades. The windshield wipers will return to the off position when you switch the ignition on.

**Note:** You can use the service position in winter to provide easier access to the wiper blades for freeing them from snow and ice. Make sure the windshield is free from snow and ice before you switch the ignition on.

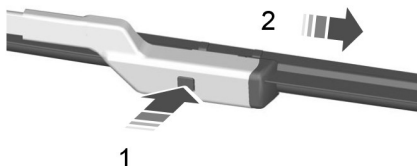
**Note:** You can rotate the wiper arms by hand after you switch the ignition off. The wiper arms will return to the normal position after you switch the ignition on.



E129986

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever in position **A** within three seconds.
3. Release the wiper lever when the windshield wipers reach the service position.

## Changing the Windscreen Wiper Blades



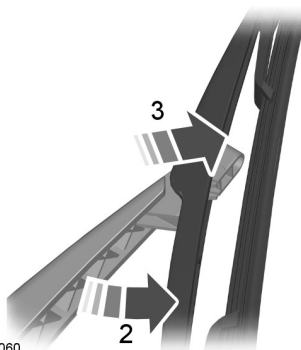
E72899

1. Press the locking button.
2. Remove the wiper blade.
3. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## Changing the Rear Window Wiper Blade

1. Lift the wiper arm.



E130060

2. Slightly rotate the wiper blade.
3. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Install in the reverse order.

**Note:** Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

## Wipers and Washers

---

**Note:** *Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.*

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### Condensation in Lamp Assemblies

Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

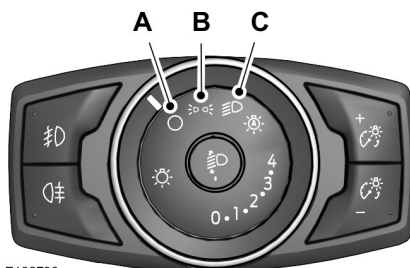
Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

## LIGHTING CONTROL

### Lighting control positions



E132706

- |   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| A | Off                 |
| B | Side and tail lamps |
| C | Headlamps           |

### Parking lamps

#### WARNING



Prolonged use of the parking lamps will discharge the battery.

Switch off the ignition.

### Both sides

Turn the lighting control switch to position **B**.

# Lighting

## One side



E130139

A Right-hand side

B Left-hand side

## High and low beam



E130140

Push the lever forward to switch between high and low beam.

## Headlamp flasher

Pull the lever slightly towards the steering wheel.

## Home safe lighting

Switch the ignition off and pull the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel to switch the headlamps on. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will go off automatically after three minutes with any door open, or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed.

The home safe lights can be canceled by either pulling the direction indicator lever towards the steering wheel again or by turning the ignition switch ON.

## AUTOLAMPS

### WARNING



In severe weather conditions, it may be necessary to switch your headlamps on manually.

**Note:** If you have switched autolamps on, you can only switch the high beam on when autolamps has switched the headlamps on.

**Note:** If autolamps have been switched on in conjunction with autowipers, low beam headlamps will illuminate automatically when the rain sensor activates the windshield wipers continuously.



E132707

The headlamps will come on and go off automatically depending on the ambient light.

The headlamps will remain on for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. You can adjust the time delay using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

## AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. A manual override may be necessary if the system fails to switch the high beam on or off.



A manual override may be required when approaching other road users such as cyclists.



Do not use the system in fog.



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. A manual override may be necessary in these cases.



The system may not deactivate the high beam if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles (for example guard rails).



Check and replace wiper blades regularly to ensure the camera sensor has a clear view through the windscreen. Replacement wiper blades must be the correct length.

**Note:** Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** Reflective road signs may be detected as oncoming traffic and the headlamps will be switched to low beam.

**Note:** Always fit Ford Original Parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

The system will automatically switch on high beams if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead the system will switch off high beam before it can distract other road users. Low beam will remain on.

A camera sensor is centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle. This monitors conditions continuously to decide when to switch the high beams on and off.

Once the system is active the high beam will switch on if:

- It is dark enough to require the use of high beams and
- there is no traffic or street lighting ahead and
- vehicle speed is greater than 25 mph (40 km/h).

The high beam will switch off if:

- The ambient light is high enough that high beam is not required.
- An approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps are detected.
- Street lighting is detected.
- Vehicle speed falls below 16 mph (25 km/h).
- The camera sensor is too hot or becomes blocked.

## Switching the System On

Switch the system on using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

# Lighting



E70719

Turn the switch to the autolamps position. See **Autolamps** (page 49).



The indicator will illuminate to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

**Note:** The indicator will only illuminate when it is dark and headlamps have been switched on.

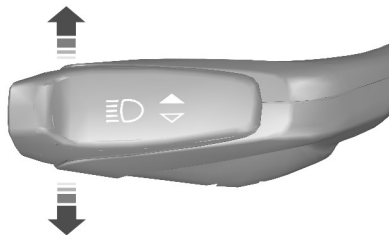
**Note:** The system may take a short time to initialize after first switching the ignition on, especially in very dark conditions. The high beam will not automatically switch on during this time.

## Setting the System Sensitivity

The system has three sensitivity levels which can be accessed via the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

The set level determines the speed at which the high beam will be restored after detected traffic leaves the field of view.

## Manually Overriding the System



E133632

Push or pull the lever to switch between high and low beam.

**Note:** This is a temporary override and the system will return to automatic operation after a short period.

To permanently switch the system off, use the information display menu or turn the lighting control switch to the headlamps position.

## FRONT FOG LAMPS

### WARNING



Only use the front fog lamps when visibility is considerably restricted by fog, snow or rain.



E132709

# Lighting

## REAR FOG LAMPS

### WARNINGS

⚠ Only use the rear fog lamps when visibility is restricted to less than 50 meters (164 feet).

⚠ Do not use the rear fog lamps when it is raining or snowing and visibility is more than 50 meters (164 feet).

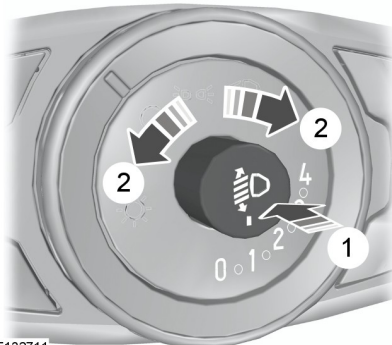


E132710

## HEADLAMP LEVELING

**Note:** Vehicles with Xenon headlamps are equipped with automatic headlamp leveling.

1. Press to release the pop out button.



E132711

2. Rotate the button to the required setting.
3. Push the button to the closed position.

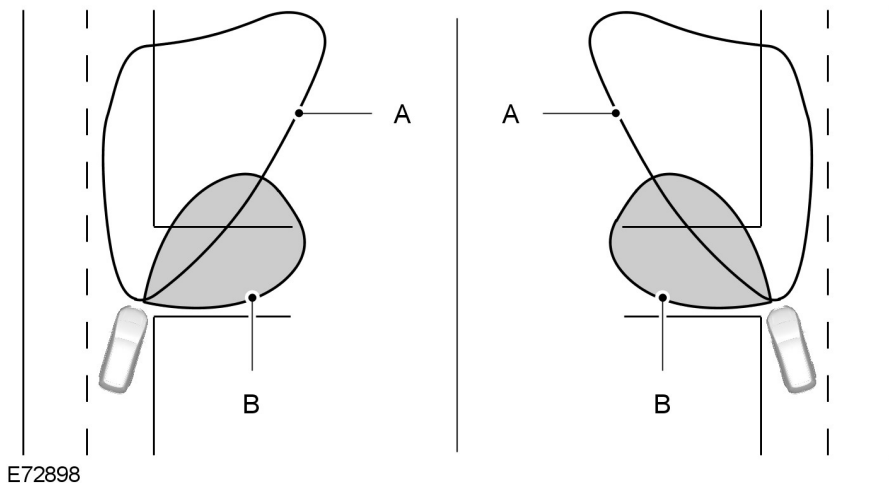
You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.

## Recommended headlamp leveling switch positions

Load		Load in luggage compartment	Switch position
Front seats	Second row seats		
1-2	-	-	0
2	3	-	1
2	3	Max <sup>1</sup>	2
1	-	Max <sup>1</sup>	3

<sup>1</sup> See **Vehicle identification** (page 236).

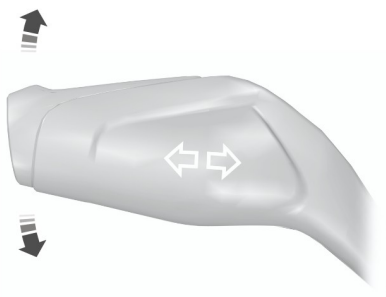
## CORNERING LAMPS



- A Headlamp beam
- B Cornering lamp beam

The cornering lamps illuminate the inside of a corner when you are turning.

## DIRECTION INDICATORS



E130141

# Lighting

**Note:** Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash only three times.

## INTERIOR LAMPS

### Interior lighting

**Note:** Individual lamps may be switched on independently, but not off if all lamps have been switched on by the driver.

**Note:** All other lamps will be either non-switchable or with individual reading or dome lamp functionality only.

The lamps will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, all lamps will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch them back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

### Side mounted lamp



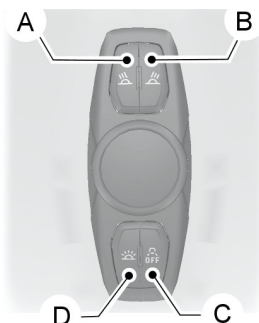
E139419

- A Reading lamp on and off switch
- B Door function switch
- C All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **B** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **C**.

### Center mounted lamp



E139420

- A Right-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- B Left-hand side reading lamp on and off switch
- C Door function switch
- D All lamps on and off switch

If you press switch **C** all lamps remain off when the door is opened. Press the switch again to reverse.

You can control all lamps using switch **D**.

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

If you leave a door open and switch the ignition off, the ambient lamps will turn off automatically after some time. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

The ambient lamps illuminate several areas, for example footwells, cup holders and doors.

# Lighting

## Type 1

The ambient lamps illuminate in only one color.

### Switching the Ambient Lamps On

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the headlamps on.

### Switching the Ambient Lamps Off

You can switch this feature off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

## Type 2

The ambient lamps illuminate in a choice of several colors.



E133092

The ambient lighting controls are on the overhead console.

### Switching the Ambient Lamps On

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the headlamps on.

Rotate the control to adjust the brightness. Press the left button to change color or switch off. Press the right button to switch all interior lamps on.

## ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

To adjust the headlamps for driving on the left or right hand side of the road, see your dealer.

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

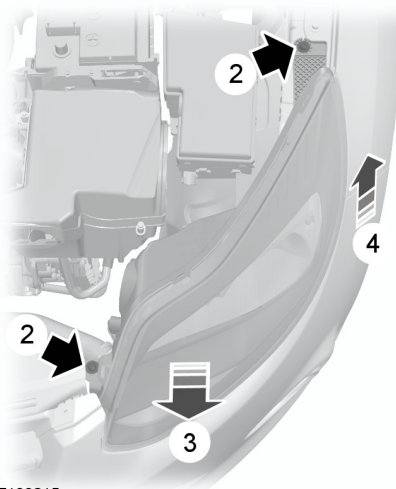
## REMOVING A HEADLAMP

### WARNING



Have Xenon bulbs changed by a trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

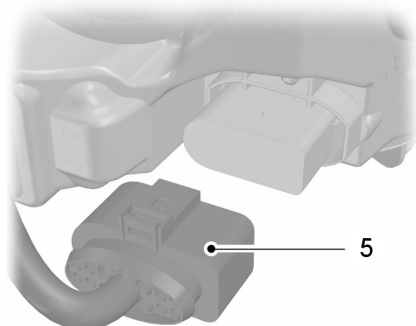
1. Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 198).



E133215

# Lighting

2. Remove the screws.
3. Pull the headlamp as far as possible towards the front of the vehicle to disengage it from the lower fixing point.
4. Lift the outer side of the headlamp and remove it.



E133750

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you reconnect the electrical connector properly.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower fixing point.

**Note:** When fitting the headlamp, make sure that the screw is located in the headlamp molding before you install it.

## CHANGING A BULB

### WARNINGS



Switch the lights and the ignition off.



Let the bulb cool down before removing it.



Have Xenon bulbs changed by a properly trained technician. There is a risk of electric shock.

### CAUTIONS



Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

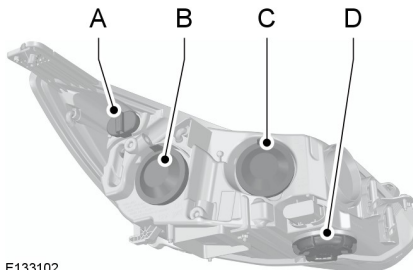


Only fit bulbs of the correct specification. See **Bulb Specification Chart** (page 63).

**Note:** The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

### Headlamp

**Note:** Remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.



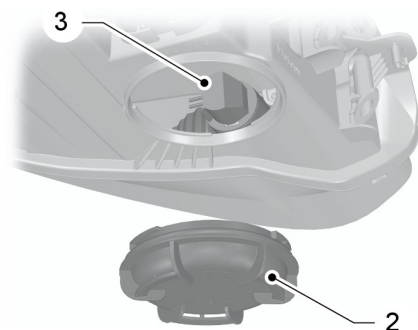
E133102

- A Side lamp
- B Headlamp low beam
- C Headlamp high beam
- D Direction indicator

### Direction indicator

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 55).

# Lighting



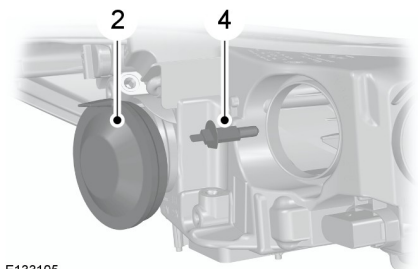
2. Remove the cover.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

## Headlamp high beam

### CAUTION

! Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 55).



2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

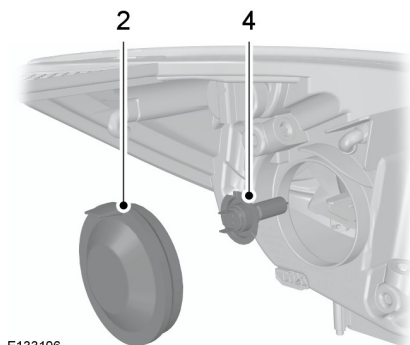
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Headlamp low beam

### CAUTION

! Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 55).

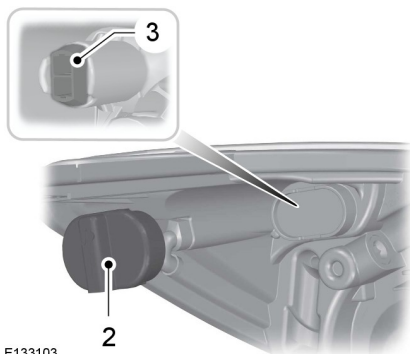


2. Remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

## Side Lamp

1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 55).

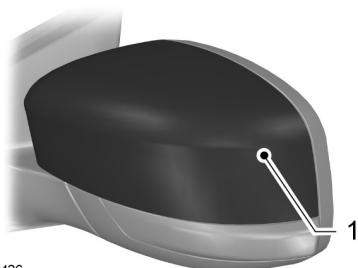
# Lighting



E133103

2. Remove the cover.
3. Remove the bulb holder.
4. Remove the bulb.

## Side repeater



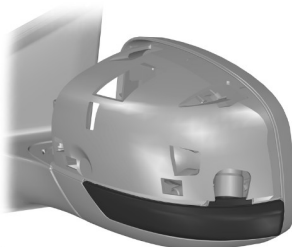
E133426

1. Carefully remove the cover.



E133427

2. Using a suitable implement release the retaining clip.



E133108

3. Carefully remove the side repeater.

# Lighting



E133109

4. Remove the bulb holder.
5. Remove the bulb.

## Approach lamp

### CAUTION



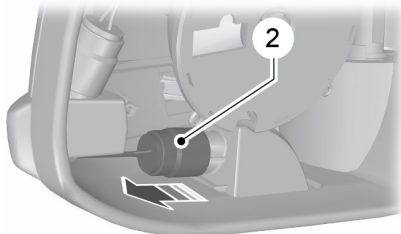
When removing the mirror glass, take care not to break it.

**Note:** Position the mirror glass as far inwards as possible.



E133110

1. Insert your fingers into the gap between the mirror housing and the mirror glass and pull gently to remove the mirror glass.



E133717

2. Remove the lamp.



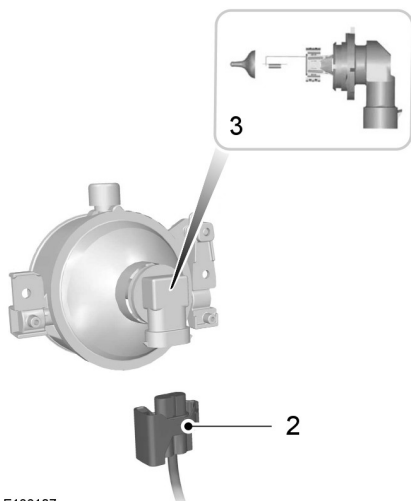
E133718

3. Remove the bulb.

## Front fog lamps

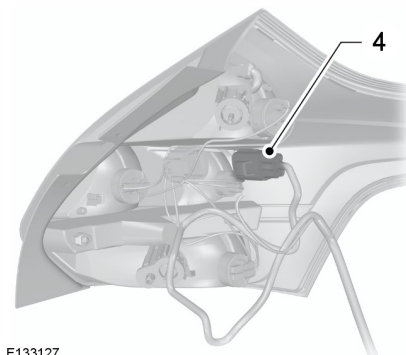
1. Remove the headlamp. See **Removing a Headlamp** (page 55).

# Lighting



E133112

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.



E133127

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.

E133107

**Note:** You cannot separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

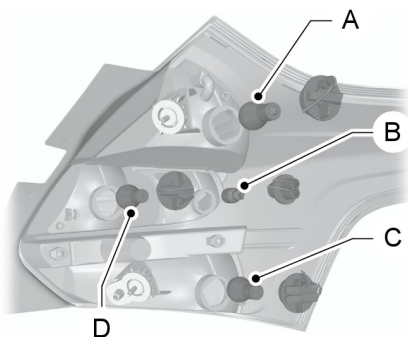
## Rear lamps - 5 door



E133111

1. Remove the trim panel.

# Lighting



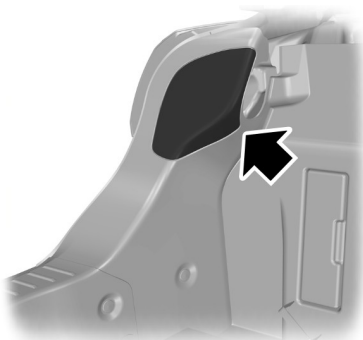
E133113

5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

- A. Brake lamp
- B. Reversing lamp
- C. Tail and fog lamp
- D. Direction indicator

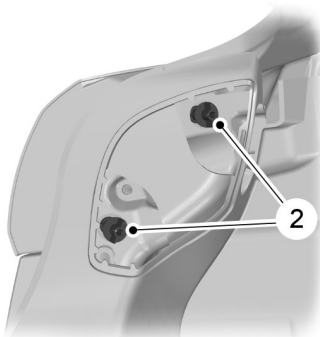
## Rear lamps - 4 door

### Direction indicator, tail and fog lamp



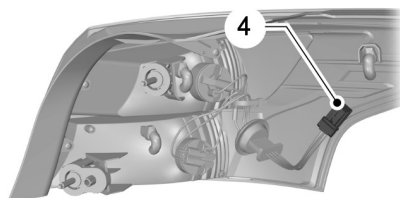
E133702

1. Remove the trim panel.



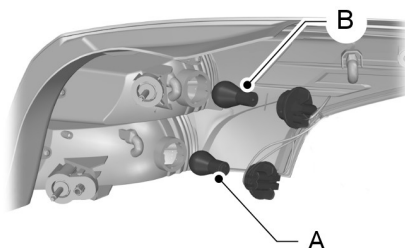
E133703

2. Remove the wing nuts and detach the clip.
3. Remove the lamp.



E133713

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E133714

5. Remove the bulb holder.

# Lighting

6. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.

- A. Tail and fog lamp
- B. Direction indicator

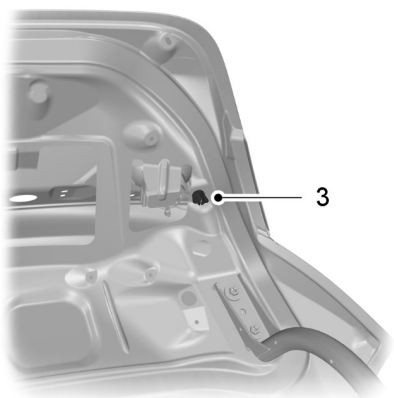
## Brake and reversing lamp

1. Open the luggage compartment lid.



E133724

2. Remove the luggage compartment lid trim.



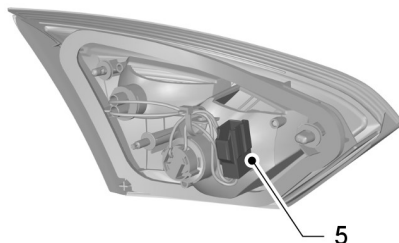
E133725

### CAUTION



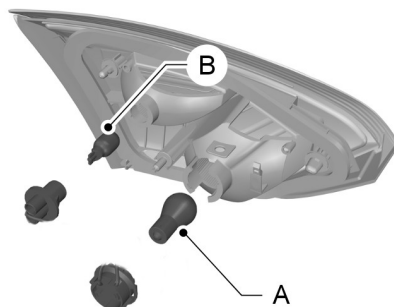
Unclip the outboard side first.

3. Remove the wing nut and detach the 2 clips.
4. Remove the lamp.



E133726

5. Disconnect the electrical connector.



E133727

6. Remove the bulb holder.
  7. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it counterclockwise and remove it.
- A. Brake lamp
  - B. Reversing lamp

## Central high mounted brake lamp

**Note:** These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.

# Lighting

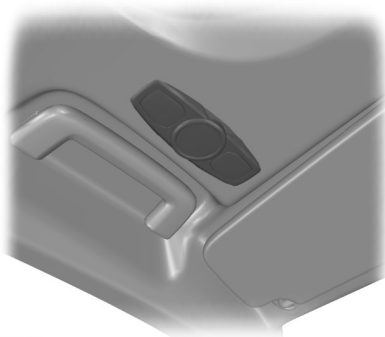
## License plate lamp

**Note:** These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.

## Interior lamps

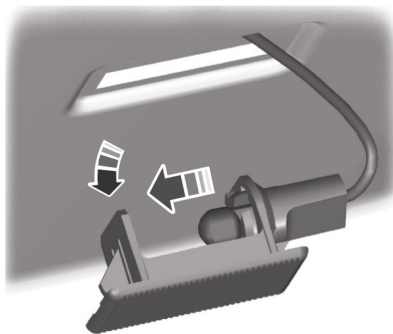
### Vehicles with LED lamps

**Note:** The LED board is not a serviceable item, please consult your dealer if this fails.



E125092

## Luggage compartment lamp, footwell lamp and tailgate lamp



E72784

1. Carefully prise out the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

## BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front direction indicator	PY21W	21
Headlamp main beam	H1	55
Headlamp dipped beam	H7	55 <sup>1</sup>
Cornering lamp	H1	55
Front fog lamp	H11	55
Side lamp	W5W	5
Side repeater	WY5W	5
Approach lamp	W5W	5
Rear direction indicator	PY21W	21

# Lighting

---

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Brake and tail lamp	P21/5W	21/5
Tail lamp	W5W	5
Rear fog lamp	P21W	21
Reversing lamp	W16W	16
Luggage compartment lamp	W5W	5

<sup>1</sup>Fit a replacement with the same rating as the one you have removed.

# Windows and Mirrors

## POWER WINDOWS

### WARNING



Do not operate the power windows unless they are free from obstruction.

**Note:** *If you operate the switches often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.*

Switch on the ignition to operate the power windows.

### Global opening and closing

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off via the global opening and closing function. See **Locks** (page 33).

### Driver's door switches

You can operate all the windows with the switches on the door trim panel of the driver's door.



E70848

## Opening and closing the windows automatically

Press or lift the switch to the second action point and release it completely. Press or lift it again to stop the windows.

### Safety switch for rear windows

#### WARNING



On some vehicles, pressing the switch will also lock the rear doors from inside. See **Child Safety Locks** (page 23).

**Locks** (page 23).

**Note:** *You can always operate the rear windows from the driver's door.*



E70850

A switch in the driver's door disables the rear power window switches.

The light in the switch comes on and the lights in the rear window switches go off when the rear windows are disabled.

### Anti-trap function

#### WARNING



Careless closing of the windows can override the protection function and cause injuries.

# Windows and Mirrors

The power windows will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

## Overriding the anti-trap function

### WARNING



While you close the window for the third time, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing window.

To override this protection function when there is a resistance, e.g. in the winter, proceed as follows:

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and you cannot close the window automatically. The window will override the resistance and you can close it fully.
3. If the window does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by an expert.

## Resetting the memory of the power windows

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is deactivated until you have reset the memory.

After the battery has been disconnected from the vehicle you must reset the memory separately for each window:

**Note:** On vehicles with a convertible top, the roof and doors must be fully closed before carrying out the following procedure.

1. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch.

3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Push and hold the switch until the window is fully open.
5. Release the switch.
6. Lift and hold the switch until the window is fully closed.
7. Open the window and try to close it automatically.
8. Reset and repeat procedure if the window does not close automatically.

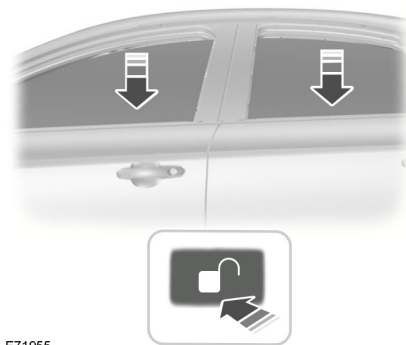
## GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can also operate the power windows with the ignition off using the global opening and global closing function.

**Note:** Global opening will only operate for a short period of time after you have unlocked your vehicle using the remote control.

**Note:** Global closing will only operate if you have set the memory correctly for each window. See **Power Windows** (page 65).

### Global Opening (If Equipped)



E71955

To open all the windows:

# Windows and Mirrors

1. Press and release the remote control unlock button.
2. Press and hold the remote control unlock button for at least three seconds.

Press the lock or unlock button to stop the opening function.

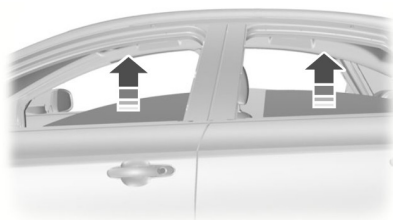
## Global Closing (If Equipped)

### Vehicles Without Keyless Entry

#### WARNING



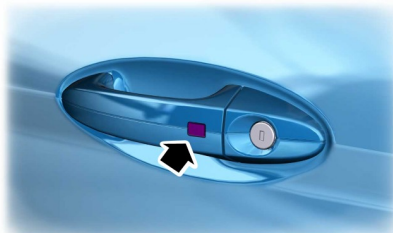
Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, press the lock or unlock button immediately to stop.



E71956

To close all the windows, press and hold the remote control lock button for at least three seconds. Press the lock or unlock button to stop the closing function. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

### Vehicles With Keyless Entry



E87384

#### WARNING



Take care when using global closing. In an emergency, touch a door handle lock sensor to stop.

**Note:** Global closing can be switched on using the driver's door handle. Global opening and closing can also be switched on using the buttons on the passive key.

To close all the windows, press and hold the driver's door handle for at least three seconds. The bounce-back function is also on during global closing.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### WARNING



Do not overestimate the distance of the objects that you see in the convex mirror. Objects seen in convex mirrors will appear smaller and further away than they actually are.

### Manual folding mirrors

#### Folding

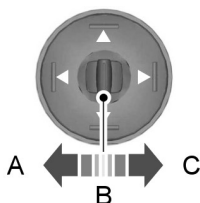
Push the mirror towards the door window glass.

# Windows and Mirrors

## Unfolding

Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

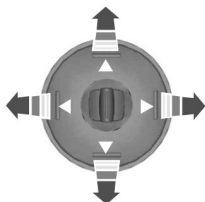
## POWER EXTERIOR MIRRORS



E70846

- A Left-hand mirror
- B Off
- C Right-hand mirror

## Mirror tilting positions



E70847

The power exterior mirrors are fitted with a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 103).

## Power folding mirrors

### Automatic folding and unfolding

**Note:** If the mirrors have been folded using the manual fold button they can only be unfolded using the manual fold button.

The mirrors will fold automatically when you lock the vehicle with the key, the remote control or a keyless entry system request. The mirrors will unfold when you unlock the vehicle with the key, the remote control, a keyless entry system request, the driver's interior door handle or starting the engine.

### Manual folding and unfolding

The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on.

**Note:** You can operate the mirrors (mirror tilting and folding) for several minutes after you switch off the ignition. They will be deactivated as soon as a door is opened.



E72623

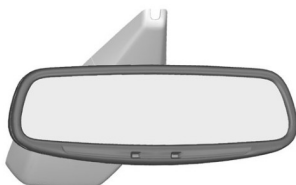
Press the button to fold or unfold the mirrors.

If you press the switch again while the mirrors are moving, they will stop and reverse the direction of movement.

**Note:** When the mirrors are operated often during a short period of time, the system may become inoperable for a period of time to prevent damage due to overheating.

# Windows and Mirrors

## AUTO-DIMMING MIRROR



E71028

The auto-dimming mirror will adjust automatically when hit by glaring light from behind. It will not work when you have selected reverse gear.

## BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

### Blind spot information system (BLIS)

#### WARNINGS

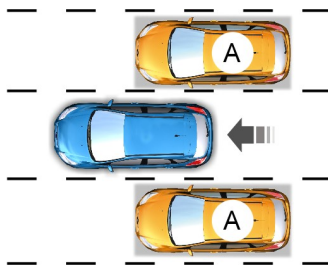


The system is not designed to prevent contact with other vehicles or objects. The system only provides a warning to assist you in detecting vehicles in the blind spot zones. The system will not detect obstacles, pedestrians, motorcyclists or cyclists.



Do not use the system as a replacement for using the side and rear view mirrors, and looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The system is not a replacement for careful driving and is only to be used as an aid.

The system is a convenience feature that aids the driver in detecting vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone (A). The detection area is on both sides of the vehicle extending rearwards from the exterior mirrors to approximately 3 meters (10 feet) beyond the bumper. The system will alert you if certain vehicles enter the blind spot zone whilst driving.



E124788

### Using the system

The system displays a yellow indicator located in the exterior mirrors.



E124736

**Note:** Both indicators will illuminate briefly when you switch the ignition on to confirm that the system is operational.

**Note:** On vehicles with automatic transmission, the system is active only in **S**, **D** and **N**.

The system is only active when you exceed 10 km/h (6 mph). The system is temporarily deactivated when you select reverse gear.

# Windows and Mirrors

## System detection and alerts

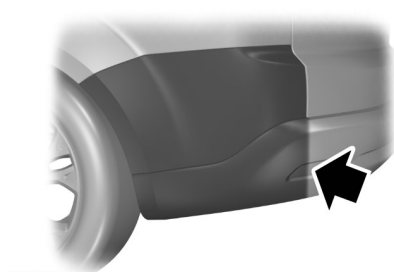
The system will trigger the alert for vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the rear or merge from the side. Vehicles that you pass, or vehicles that enter the blind spot zone from the front, will only trigger the alert after the vehicle has remained in the blind spot zone for a short period of time.

**Note:** Vehicles that pass through the blind zone quickly (typically less than 2 seconds) will not trigger the alert.

The system consists of two radar sensors each located behind the rear wheels hidden behind the bumpers.

### CAUTIONS

- ❗ Do not place items such as bumper stickers in this area.
- ❗ Repairs to these areas using body filler will affect the performance of the system.



E124741

## Detection limitations

There may be certain instances where vehicles entering and exiting the blind spot zones may not be detected.

Instances which may cause non-detection:

- Debris build up on the rear bumper panels in the area of the sensors.
- Certain manoeuvring of vehicles entering and exiting the blind zone.

- Vehicles passing through the blind zone at high speed.
- Severe weather conditions.
- Several vehicles passing through the blind zone following each other closely.

## False alerts

**Note:** False alerts are temporary and will self correct.

There may be certain instances when the system will alert with no vehicle present in the blind zone.

Circumstances where false alerts may occur:

- Road guardrails.
- Highway concrete walls.
- Construction areas.
- Sharp turns around a building.
- Bushes and trees.
- Cyclists and motorcyclists.
- Coming to a stop with a vehicle directly behind but very close.

## Turning the system on and off

**Note:** The on or off position will remain until manually changed.

You can turn the system on and off using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

When you turn the system off no further alerts will be received. The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

## Detection errors

**Note:** The alert indicator in the mirror will not illuminate.

# Windows and Mirrors

---

If the system senses a fault on either sensor, the system warning symbol will illuminate and remain on. The information display will confirm the fault and indicate whether the left or right side is affected.

## Blocked sensor

### WARNING



Prior to the system recognizing a blocked condition and issuing a warning, the number of missed objects will increase.

### CAUTION



The sensors may not detect vehicles in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.

**Note:** *Keep the rear bumper area surrounding the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow.*

If a sensor becomes blocked the system performance may degrade. A blocked sensor message may be displayed.

The system will automatically return to normal operation once two other vehicles have been detected on both sides.

## Trailer towing false alerts

### CAUTION



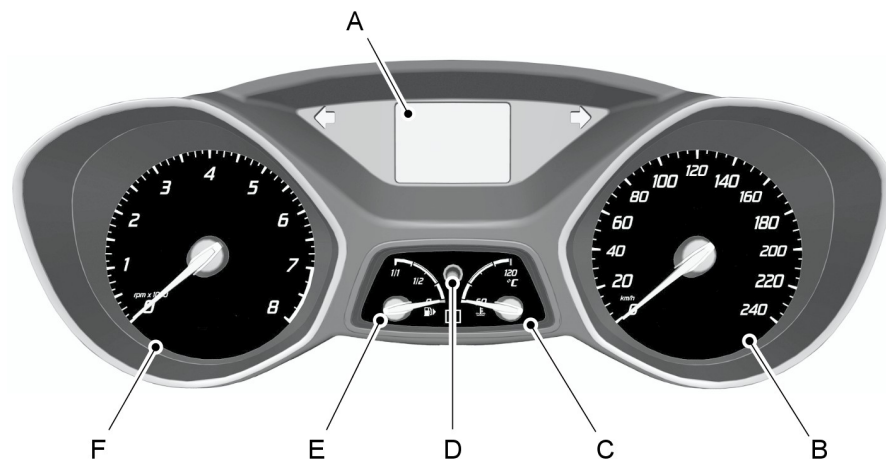
Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly be detected. Switch the system off to avoid false alerts. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

If the vehicle is fitted with a trailer tow module approved by us, the system will detect a connected trailer and deactivate. A confirmation message will be shown in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 86). The BLIS warning indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

# Instrument Cluster

## GAUGES

### Type 1

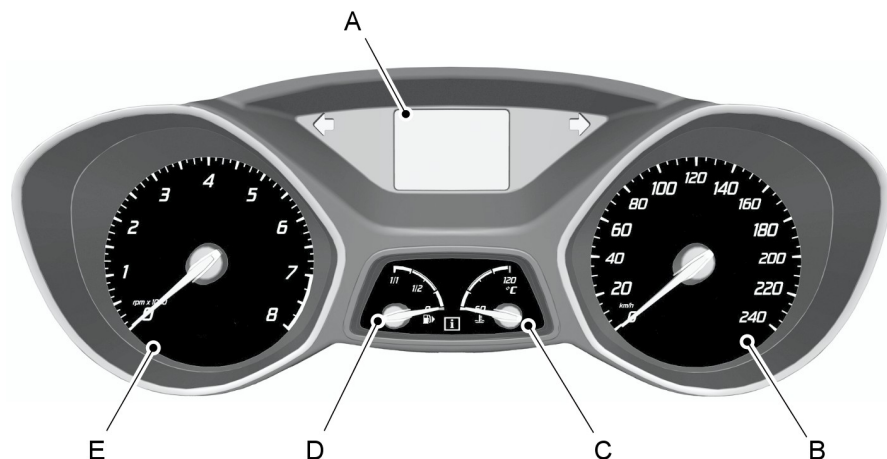


E132065

- A Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Tripmeter reset button
- E Fuel gauge
- F Tachometer

# Instrument Cluster

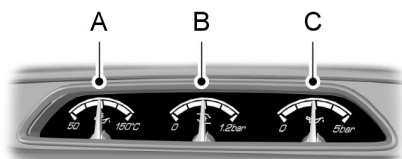
## Type 2 and 3



E130149

- A Information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).
- B Speedometer
- C Engine coolant temperature gauge
- D Fuel gauge
- E Tachometer

## 2.0L EcoBoost - M14



E141657

- A Engine oil temperature gauge
- B Turbocharger boost gauge
- C Engine oil pressure gauge

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

### All Vehicles

Shows the temperature of the engine coolant. At normal operating temperature, the needle will remain in the center section.

### WARNING



Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been resolved.

# Instrument Cluster

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

## Oil Temperature Gauge

Indicates the temperature of the engine oil.

At normal operating temperature, the needle remains within the normal area.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Reduce engine speed as soon as safely possible to allow the engine to cool. If the engine is continued to be driven at high engine speeds with the needle in the red section, the engine speed will be reduced automatically to prevent engine damage.

## Turbocharger Boost Gauge

Indicates the added intake pressure provided by the turbocharger.

## Oil Pressure Gauge

### WARNING



Driving with your oil pressure gauge pointer continuously in the red section of the scale may damage the engine.

**Note:** When the engine is cold, oil pressure close to 5 bar may be indicated. This is normal. As the engine warms up, the oil pressure will drop.

This gauge indicates engine oil pressure up to a recommended safe maximum of 5 bar.

During normal driving the indicated oil pressure will vary with engine speed, the pressure rising as engine speed rises and dropping as engine speed drops.

If the engine oil pressure drops below the normal range, the oil pressure gauge needle will drop into the red section of the gauge scale and the engine oil pressure warning lamp in the main instrument cluster will illuminate. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off immediately. Check the oil level and add oil if needed. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).

## Fuel Gauge

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler cap is located.

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators illuminate when the ignition is switched on:

- Airbag
- Anti-Lock Brake System
- Stability control (ESP)
- Low fuel
- Brake system
- Frost
- ESP off

If a warning or indicator lamp does not illuminate when the ignition is switched on, it indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by properly trained technician.

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

# Instrument Cluster

## Airbag Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function.

Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## Blind Spot Monitor Indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is deactivated or in conjunction with a message. See

**Blind Spot Information System** (page 69). See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## Brake System Warning Lamp

### WARNING



Reduce your speed gradually and stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Use your brakes with care.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged.

If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. If the lamp remains on when you release the parking brake, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

## Cruise Control Indicator



It will illuminate when you have set a speed using the cruise control system. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 153).

## Direction Indicator



Flashes during operation. A sudden increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb. See **Changing a Bulb** (page 56).

## Engine Temperature Warning Lamp

### WARNING



If the engine warning lamp illuminates in conjunction with a message, have the system checked as soon as possible.



If it illuminates with the engine running, this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, **reduce the speed of your vehicle immediately**. If it continues to flash, avoid heavy acceleration or deceleration. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## Forward Alert Warning Indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. See **Forward alert function** (page 159).

## Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the front fog lamps on.

# Instrument Cluster

## Frost Warning Lamp

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.



It will illuminate when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

## Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it extinguishes before starting. See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 123).

## Headlamp Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and tail lamps on.

## High Beam Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the headlamp high beam on. It will flash when you use the headlamp flasher.

## Ignition Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## Lane Departure Warning Indicator



It will illuminate when this feature is switched off or in conjunction with a message. See **Lane Departure Warning** (page 163).

## Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates, refuel as soon as possible.

## Low Tire Pressure Warning Indicator



See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 224).

## Message Center Indicator



It will illuminate when a new message is stored in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## Oil Pressure Warning Lamp

### WARNING



Do not resume your journey if it illuminates despite the level being correct. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).

## Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It will illuminate when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

## Safety Belt Minder Warning Lamp



See **Belt Minder** (page 27).

# Instrument Cluster

## Shift Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you that shifting to a higher gear may give better fuel economy and lower CO2 emissions. It will not illuminate during periods of high acceleration, braking or when the clutch pedal is pressed.

## Stability Control Indicator



While driving, it flashes during activation of the system. After switching on the ignition, if it does not illuminate or illuminates continuously while driving, this indicates a malfunction. During a malfunction, the system switches off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



If you switch traction control off, the warning lamp will illuminate. The lamp will go out when you switch the system back on or when you switch the ignition off.

## Start-Stop Indicator



It will illuminate to inform you when the engine shuts down or in conjunction with a message. See **Using start-stop** (page 126). See **Information Messages** (page 86).

## AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

### Switching the Chimes On and Off

You can turn off certain chimes using the information display control on the steering wheel. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

### To set which chimes should sound, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Chimes	Press the <b>OK</b> button.
Information	Press the <b>OK</b> button to switch the chime on and off.
Warning	

## Automatic Transmission

A warning chime will sound if park (**P**) is not selected and the driver door is opened.

## Frost

### WARNING



Even if the temperature rises to above 39°F (4°C) there is no guarantee that the road is free of hazards caused by inclement weather.

A warning chime will sound when the outside air temperature is 39°F (4°C) or below.

## Key Outside Car

### Vehicles with Keyless Entry

A warning chime will sound when the engine is running and a passive key is no longer detected within the vehicle interior.

### Door Open

A warning chime will sound when any door is opened if the vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

### Lights On

A warning chime will sound if the driver door is opened with the exterior lights switched on and the ignition switched off.

### Low Fuel

A warning chime will sound when the remaining fuel is less than approximately 1.3 gallons (6 liters).

## Safety Belt Reminder

### WARNINGS



The safety belt reminder remains in stand-by mode when the front safety belts have been fastened. It will be turned on if either safety belt is unfastened.



Do not sit on top of a fastened safety belt to prevent the safety belt reminder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the safety belt correctly.

---

A warning chime will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds the pre-determined limit if either of the front safety belts are unfastened. The chime will stop after short period of time.

See **Belt Minder** (page 27).

# Information Displays

## GENERAL INFORMATION

**Note:** The information display will remain on for several minutes after you switch off the ignition.

Various systems on your vehicle can be controlled using the information display controls on the steering column. Corresponding information is displayed in the information display.

For detailed instructions on navigation, refer to the appropriate manual.

### Device list

The icon changes to show the current function in use.



CD



Radio



Auxiliary input



Phone



Settings

### Controls

Press the **up** and **down** arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.

Press the **right** arrow button to enter a sub-menu.

Press the **left** arrow button to exit a menu.

Hold the **left** arrow button pressed at any time to return to the main menu display (escape button).

Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm a setting.

### Menu structure - information display

#### All vehicles

You can access the menu using the Information display control. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

Trip Computer		
Trip odometer		
Dist to empty		
Instant fuel		
Average fuel	Ford EcoMode	Gear shifting
		Anticipation
		Speed
		Ford EcoMode
Average speed		

# Information Displays

<b>Trip Computer</b>
Outside air
All values*

\*Contact an authorized dealer to configure the trip computer display.

<b>Information</b>
Seatbelts
Auto StartStop
Driver alert
Traffic signs

<b>Settings</b>		
Driver assist	Traction ctrl	
	ESC	On
		Sport mode
		Off
	BLIS	
	City Stop	
	Forward alert	High sensitivity
		Normal sens
		Low sensitivity
		Off
	Driver alert	
	Hill start assist	
	Tyre monitor	
	Traffic signs	Recognition
		Speed warning

# Information Displays

Settings		
	Lane keeping	Sensitivity
		Intensity
Lighting	Rain light	
	Ambient light	
	Dimming	Auto
		Manual
		Set
	Auto highbeam	On
		Sensitivity
	Headlamp delay	Manual
		20 seconds
		40 seconds
		60 seconds
Display	Navigation info	Always on
		On guidance
		Always off
	Language	English
		Deutsch
		Italiano
		Français
		Español
		Čeština
		Dansk
		Norsk
		Русский
		Nederlands
		Polski

# Information Displays

Settings		
		Svenska
		Português
	Measure unit	
	Temp unit	
Chimes	Park slot found	
	Information	
	Warning	
Convenience	Aux heater	
	Park heater	Time 1
		Time 2
		Once
		Heat now
	Alarm	Full guard
		Reduced
		Ask on exit
System check		

## System Check

All active warnings will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Press the up or down arrow button to scroll through the list.

## Menu structure - information and entertainment display

You can access the menu using the buttons on the audio or navigation unit.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

CD
Tracks and folders

# Information Displays

---

<b>Radio</b>
FM
FM-AST
DAB1
DAB2
AM
AM-AST

<b>Aux</b>
iPOD
USB
Bluetooth audio
Line in

<b>SYNC-Phone</b>
Dial number
Redial
Phonebook
Call history
Speed Dial
Text messaging
BT Devices
Phone settings

# Information Displays

Menu	
SYNC<Settings	Bluetooth on
	Set defaults
	Master reset
	Install on SYNC
	System info
	Voice settings
SYNC-Apps	
Audio settings	Adaptive volume
	Sound
	DSP Occupancy
	DSP equalizer
	News
	Alternat. frequency
	Regional mode
	DAB servicelink
	Bluetooth
Clock settings	Set time
	Set date
	GPS time
	Set time zone
	Summer time
	24h mode

# Information Displays

---

## TRIP COMPUTER

### Distance to empty

Indicates the approximate distance the vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

### Instantaneous fuel consumption

Indicates the current average fuel consumption.

### Average fuel consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

### Trip Odometer

Registers the mileage of individual journeys.

### Digital Speedometer

The speed your vehicle is traveling at will display as a digital number.

### Average speed

Indicates the average speed calculated since the function was last reset.

### Outside air temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

### Odometer

Registers the total mileage of the vehicle.

### Resetting the trip computer

To reset a particular display:

1. Highlight **Trip Computer** with the up and down arrow buttons and press the right arrow button.
2. Highlight the function to be reset.
3. Hold the **OK** button pressed.

## PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

### Language setting

A choice of 13 languages are available:

English, German, Italian, French, Spanish, Russian, Dutch, Polish, Swedish, Portuguese, Czech, Danish and Norwegian.

### Measure units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the units of measure using this display will affect the following displays:

- Distance to empty.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption.
- Average speed.

### Temperature units

To toggle between metric and imperial units, scroll to this display and press the **OK** button.

Toggling the temperature units using this display will affect the following displays:

- Outside air temperature.
- The temperature display in the automatic climate control.

### Chime deactivation

The following chimes can be deactivated:

- Warning messages.
- Information messages.

# Information Displays

## INFORMATION MESSAGES



E130248

Press the **OK** button to acknowledge and remove some information messages from the information display. Other messages automatically remove after a period of time.

You will need to acknowledge certain messages before you access the menus.

A system-specific symbol with a message indicator may supplement some messages.

**Note:** Depending on your vehicle instrument cluster, certain messages are truncated.

### Message Indicator



The message indicator will illuminate to supplement some messages. Depending on the severity of the message, the message indicator will be red or amber and will remain on until the cause is resolved.

A system specific symbol and the message indicator will illuminate to supplement some messages.

## Active City Stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Active City Stop Sensor blocked Clean screen	amber	See (page 167).
Active City Stop not available	amber	See (page 167).
Active City Stop Auto braking	-	See (page 167).

## Airbag

Message	Message indicator	Action
Airbag malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Alarm

Message	Message indicator	Action
Alarm triggered check vehicle	amber	See <b>Alarm</b> (page 39).
Alarm malfunction service required	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Automatic Main Beam Control

Message	Message indicator	Action
Front camera low visibility Clean screen	amber	The front camera sensor has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield.
Front camera malfunction Service required	amber	The front camera sensor has malfunctioned. Have this checked as soon as possible.

## Battery and Charging System

Message	Message indicator	Action
Electrical system over voltage stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Battery low check handbook	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Blind Spot Monitor

Message	Message indicator	Action
BLIS low visibility check handbook	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 69).
BLIS: right sensor fault service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS: left sensor fault service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
BLIS not available trailer attached	amber	See <b>Blind Spot Information System</b> (page 69).

## Child Power Lock

Message	Message indicator	Action
Child lock malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Climate Control

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auxiliary Heater on	amber	See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 103).
Auxiliary Heater off	-	See <b>Auxiliary Heater</b> (page 103).

# Information Displays

## Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Message indicator	Action
Front radar sensor blocked check hand-book	amber	See <b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b> (page 155).
Forward Alert not available	amber	See <b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b> (page 155).
ACC not available	amber	See <b>Adaptive cruise control (ACC)</b> (page 155).

## Doors Open

Message	Message indicator	Action
Driver door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Driver side rear door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Passenger door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Passenger side rear door open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Luggage compartment lid open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close.
Bonnet open	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and close. See <b>Opening and Closing the Hood</b> (page 198).

## Driver Alert

Message	Message indicator	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	red	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	amber	Take a rest break soon.

# Information Displays

## Engine Immobiliser

Message	Message indicator	Action
immobilizer active check handbook	amber	The ignition key is not recognized. Remove the ignition key and try again.
Immobilizer malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Hill Start Assist

Message	Message indicator	Action
Hill start assist not available	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Keyless Entry

Message	Message indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree key not inside car	red	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 35).
Ford KeyFree key inside vehicle	amber	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 35).
Ford KeyFree Place key in key holder	-	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 35).
Ford KeyFree no key detected	-	See <b>Keyless Entry</b> (page 35).
Key battery low replace soon	-	See <b>Changing the remote control battery</b> (page 30).
Steering lock engaged turn steering wheel	-	See <b>Steering Wheel Lock</b> (page 121).

# Information Displays

## Lane Keeping Aid

Message	Message indicator	Action
Lane keeping aid malfunction Service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Lighting

Message	Message indicator	Action
Headlamp malfunction service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Brake lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs has blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 56).
Rear fog lamp bulb fault	-	The rear fog lamp bulb has blown. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 56).
Dipped beam bulb fault	-	One or both of the headlamp low beam bulbs has blown. Check the headlamp low beam bulbs. See <b>Changing a Bulb</b> (page 56).
Trailer brake lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer has blown. Check the brake lamp bulbs on your trailer.
Trailer turn lamp bulb fault	-	One or both of the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer has blown. Check the direction indicator bulbs on your trailer.

# Information Displays

## Maintenance

Message	Message indicator	Action
High engine temperature stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Brake fluid level low service now	red	Check the brake fluid level. See <b>Brake and Clutch Fluid Check</b> (page 210).
Engine malfunction service now	red	Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and switch off the engine immediately. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.
Water detected in fuel service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Engine malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Washer fluid level low	-	Check the washer fluid level. See <b>Washer Fluid Check</b> (page 211).
Engine oil change due	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Occupant Protection

Message	Message indicator	Action
Service Belt Minder	-	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

## Parking Aid

Message	Message indicator	Action
Parking aid malfunction Service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

# Information Displays

## Parking Brake

Message	Message indicator	Action
Park brake applied	red	See <b>Parking Brake</b> (page 138).
Park brake applied	amber	See <b>Parking Brake</b> (page 138).

## Power Steering

Message	Message indicator	Action
Steering lock malfunction stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering loss stop safely	red	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction service required	amber	Your vehicle will have full steering capability, but you will need to exert greater force on the steering wheel. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Steering malfunction service now	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Stability Control

Message	Message indicator	Action
Traction control off	amber	See <b>General Information</b> (page 79).

# Information Displays

## Starting the Engine

Message	Message indicator	Action
Ford KeyFree switch ignition off press POWER	red	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 119).
Drive to clean exhaust filter check handbook	amber	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 123).
Engine malfunction service now	amber	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 123).
Press brake to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 119).
Press clutch to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 119).
Press brake and clutch to start	-	See <b>Keyless Starting</b> (page 119).
Cranking time exceeded	-	See <b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b> (page 119).
Engine preheating	-	See <b>Starting a Diesel Engine</b> (page 123).
Cleaning exhaust filter	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 123).
Filter cleaning complete	-	See <b>Diesel Particulate Filter</b> (page 123).

# Information Displays

## Start-Stop

Message	Message indicator	Action
Auto StartStop Switch ignition off	red	Switch the ignition off before leaving the vehicle if the system has shut down the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 126).
Auto StartStop malfunction Service required	amber	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	-	Press the clutch pedal and restart the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 126).
Auto StartStop Select neutral to start engine	-	Select neutral for the system to restart the engine. See <b>Using start-stop</b> (page 126).
Auto StartStop Manual restart required	-	The system is not functioning. A manual restart is required.

# Information Displays

## Transmission

Message	Message indicator	Action
Transmission too hot press brake	red	Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further overheating. Select neutral (N) or park (P) and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display. If the vehicle is driven with this message active you may experience vehicle judder as a further overheat warning.
Transmission malfunction service now	red	Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Transmission overheating stop safely	red	The transmission is too hot. In these extreme conditions the transmission will disengage drive in order to prevent damage due to overheating. You will not be able to drive until the transmission has cooled. Select neutral (N) or park (P) and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display.
Transmission too hot press brake	amber	Under certain driving conditions it is possible that the clutches in the transmission can overheat. In these circumstances it is necessary to press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle to prevent further overheating. Select neutral (N) or park (P) and apply the foot brake and parking brake until the transmission has cooled and the message disappears from the display. If the vehicle is driven with this message active you may experience vehicle judder as a further overheat warning.
Transmission limited function check handbook	amber	Some gears may not be available. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.
Transmission warming up please wait	-	At low outside temperatures, after starting the engine, it may take the transmission several seconds to engage reverse (R) or drive (D). Keep the brake pedal depressed until these messages disappear from the display.

# Information Displays

Message	Message indicator	Action
Transmission not in Park select P	-	See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 135). See <b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b> (page 119).
To start press brake	-	See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 135). See <b>Starting and Stopping the Engine</b> (page 119).
Press brake pedal	-	See <b>Automatic Transmission</b> (page 135).

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Message indicator	Action
Check tyre pressures	amber	The pressure in one or more tires has dropped. Check as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sys malfunction service required	amber	Permanent malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by a properly trained technician.

# Climate Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Outside air

Keep the air intakes forward of the windshield free from obstruction (snow, leaves etc.) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

### Recirculated air

#### CAUTION

⚠ Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to mist up. If the windows mist up, follow the settings for defrosting and demisting the windshield.

The air currently in the passenger compartment will be recirculated. Outside air will not enter the vehicle.

### Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the engine coolant.

### Air conditioning

**Note:** The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C (39°F).

**Note:** If you use the air conditioning, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher.

Air is directed through the evaporator where it is cooled. Humidity is extracted from the air to help keep the windows free of mist. The resulting condensation is directed to the outside of the vehicle and it is therefore normal if you see a small pool of water under your vehicle.

### General information on controlling the interior climate

Fully close all the windows.

### Warming the interior

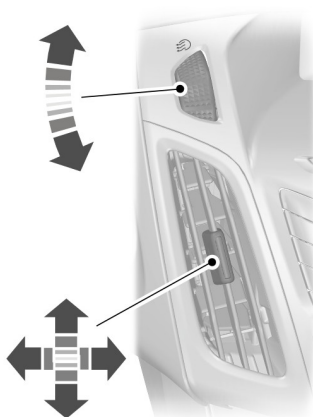
Direct the air towards your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air towards the windshield and the door windows.

### Cooling the interior

Direct the air towards your face.

## AIR VENTS

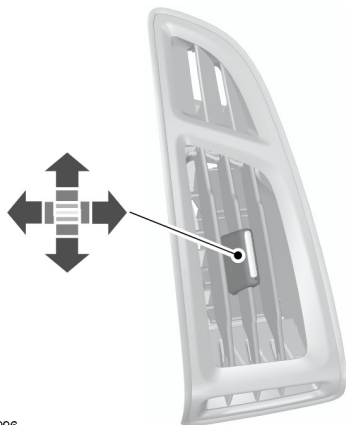
### Center air vents



E132995

# Climate Control

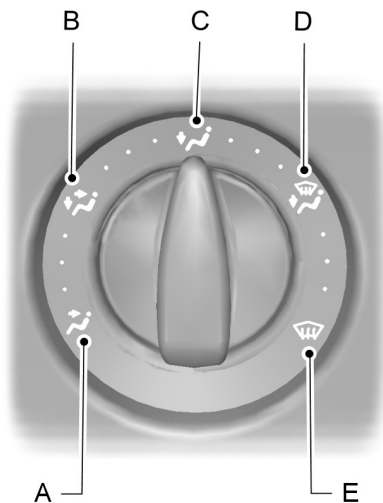
## Side air vent



E132996

## MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL

### Air distribution control



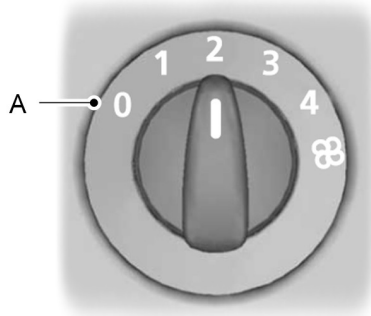
E74660

- A Face level
- B Face level and footwell
- C Footwell
- D Footwell and windshield
- E Windshield

You can set the air distribution control to any position between the symbols.

# Climate Control

## Blower



E75470

A Off

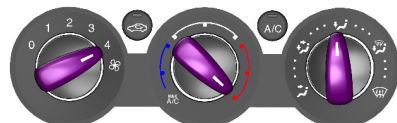
**Note:** If you switch the blower off, the windshield may mist up.

## Recirculated air



Press the button to toggle between outside air and recirculated air.

## Heating the interior quickly



E129884

## Ventilation



E129885

Set the air distribution control, blower and air vents to suit your requirements.

## Air conditioning

### Switching the air conditioning on and off



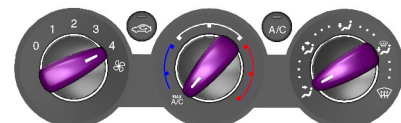
If you turn the blower off, the air conditioning will turn off. When you turn the blower on again, the air conditioning will come on automatically.

## Cooling with outside air



E129886

## Cooling the interior quickly



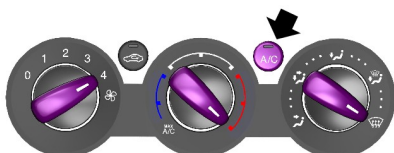
E129887

# Climate Control

With the heater control in this position, the air conditioning and recirculated air will switch on automatically.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off.

## Defrosting and demisting the windshield



E129888

When the temperature is above 4°C (39°F), the air conditioning will switch on automatically. Make sure that the blower is on. The indicator in the switch will illuminate during defrosting and demisting.

If you move the air distribution control to a position other than windshield, the **A/C** will remain on.

You can switch the air conditioning and recirculated air on and off while the air distribution control is set to windshield.

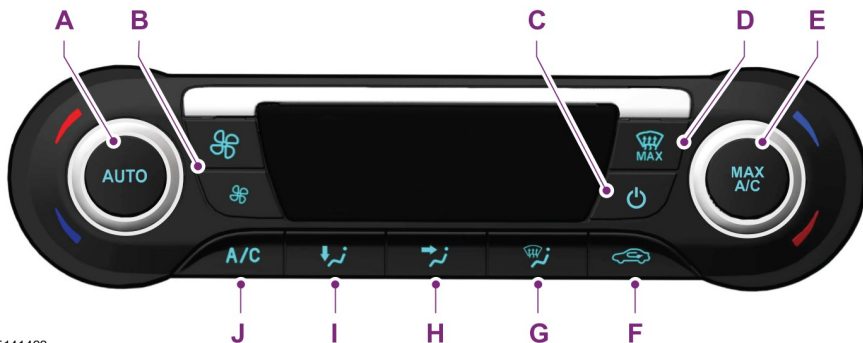
If necessary, switch the heated windows on. See **Heated Windows and Mirrors** (page 103).

## Reducing interior air humidity



E129889

## AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL

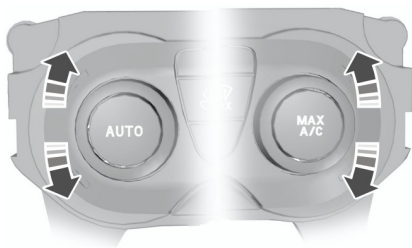


E141422

# Climate Control

- A **AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.
- B **Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Press the buttons to select the desired fan speed. The setting is shown in the display.
- C **On and off button:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.
- D **MAX Defrost:** Press the button to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. When the air distribution is set in this position you are unable to select recirculated air or manually adjust the temperature control. Press the **AUTO** button to return to auto mode.
- E **MAX A/C:** Press the button to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more economical and efficient than normal air conditioning.
- F **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- G **Defrost:** Press the button to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.
- H **Instrument panel:** Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.
- I **Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.
- J **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle using outside air. To improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle, drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes.

## Temperature Control



E133115

You can set the temperature between 60°F (15.5°C) and 85°F (29.5°C). In position LO, the system switches to permanent cooling. In position HI, the system switches to permanent heating.

**Note:** If you select either position LO or HI, the system does not regulate a stable temperature.

# Climate Control

## Mono Mode

In this mode, the temperature settings for both the driver side and passenger side are linked. If you adjust the setting using the rotary control on the driver side, the system adjusts the temperature to the same setting on the passenger side.

## Switching Mono Mode Off

Select a temperature for the passenger side using the rotary control on the passenger side. Mono mode automatically switches off. The temperature on the driver side remains unchanged. You can now adjust the driver side and passenger side temperatures independently. The temperature settings for each side are shown in the display.

## Switching Mono Mode Back On

Press and hold the **AUTO** button. The passenger side temperature is adjusted to the driver side temperature setting.

## HEATED WINDOWS AND MIRRORS

### Heated Windows

Use the heated windows to defrost or demist the windshield or rear window.

**Note:** The heated windows operate only when the engine is running.

### Heated Windshield



### Heated Rear Window



### Heated Exterior Mirrors

Electric exterior mirrors have a heating element that will defrost or demist the mirror glass. They will switch on automatically when you switch the heated rear window on.

## AUXILIARY HEATER

### Parking heater

#### WARNINGS



The parking heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapors or dust or in enclosed spaces.



The parking heater should be switched on for approximately 10 minutes at least once a month all year round. This prevents the water pump and heater motor from seizing.

**Note:** The parking heater will only operate if there is at least 7.5 liters (1.6 gallons) of fuel in the fuel tank and the ambient temperature is below 15°C (59°F). The heater will not operate if the battery is low.

**Note:** The heating depends on the outside air temperature.

**Note:** When the parking heater is activated, exhaust fumes may come from under the sides of the vehicle. This is normal.

# Climate Control

**Note:** On vehicles with manual climate control the heating of the vehicle interior is dependent on the temperature, air distribution and blower control settings.

The parking heater operates independently of the vehicle heater by heating the engine's coolant circuit. It is fed from the vehicle fuel tank. You can also use it while the vehicle is in motion to help the vehicle heater warm up the interior more quickly.

Used properly, the parking heater provides the following benefits:

- It preheats the interior of the vehicle.
- It keeps the windows clear of ice in the event of frost and prevents condensation.
- It avoids cold starts and allows the engine to reach operating temperature sooner.

To prevent the battery from discharging:

- Once the parking heater has performed one heating cycle, the next programmed heating cycle will only be carried out if you have started the vehicle's engine in between.
- After a heating cycle, drive the vehicle for at least the period of the heating cycle.

## Program the parking heater

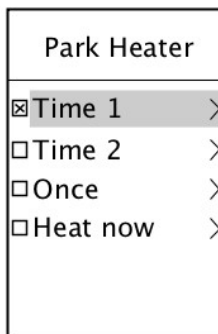
**Note:** The programmed time is the time at which you wish the vehicle to be warm and ready to drive, not the time at which the heater switches on.

**Note:** You must program the times at least 70 minutes in advance of the time you wish to set.

**Note:** You must set the time and date correctly. See **Clock** (page 116).

To program the heating times:

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu. See **Information Displays** (page 79).
2. Select the park heater option.

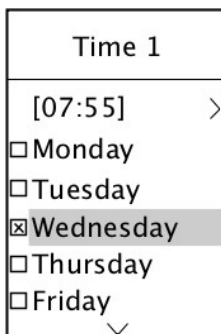


E136301

- The two time functions allow you to program up to two heating cycles for each day of the week. These times will remain stored and the heater will warm up the vehicle at these times on these days every week.
- The function **once** allows you to program one heating cycle for one specific day.
- The function **Heat now** automatically switches on the heater.

# Climate Control

## Program the functions Time 1 and Time 2



E74468

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Select the first program time list.
3. Highlight the day on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Continue in the same way to select all the days on which the heater should warm up the vehicle.
6. To set the time at which the vehicle should be warmed up, highlight the time at the top of the display and press the **OK** button. The hours start to flash.
7. Adjust the hours and minutes as necessary.

You can use the second program time list to set a second cycle, for example different times on different days or twice on the same day. The program procedure is the same as for the first program timer.

### Deactivating the program heater

1. Use the arrow buttons on the steering wheel to enter the main menu.
2. Uncheck the active program session.

## Program the heater for a single cycle

1. Select **Once** and press the right arrow button.
2. Press the **OK** button and set the required time and date.
3. Press **OK** to confirm the set time and date.

### Activating the heater manually

Highlight **Heat now** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

To deactivate the heater, uncheck the **Heat now** function.

## Fuel operated heater (depending on country)

### WARNING



The fuel operated heater must not be operated at filling stations, near sources of combustible vapors or dust or in enclosed spaces.

The fuel operated heater aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature and the coolant temperature, unless you have deactivated it.

To deactivate the fuel operated heater:

1. Highlight **Aux. Heater** and press the **OK** button. A cross appears in the box when the heater is activated.

# Climate Control

## Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country)

The diesel auxiliary heater (PTC electrical heater) aids in warming the engine and the vehicle interior on vehicles with a diesel engine. It is switched on or off automatically depending on the outside air temperature, the coolant temperature and the alternator load.

## POWER MOON ROOF

### WARNING



Before operating the power moonroof you should verify it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moonroof opening. Failure to do so could result in serious personal injury. It is the primary responsibility of the supervising adults to never leave a child unattended in a vehicle and to never leave the keys in an unattended vehicle.

**Note:** When the switches are operated often during a short period of time, the system might become inoperable for a certain time to prevent damage due to overheating.

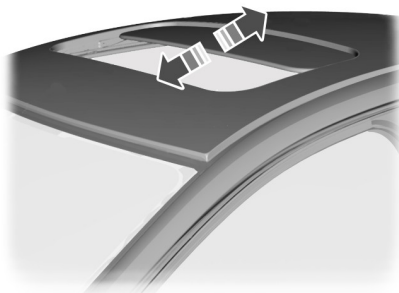
**Note:** The power moonroof can also be operated with the ignition off via the global opening and global closing function. See **Global Opening and Closing** (page 66).

There are two ways of opening the moonroof – the rear of the moonroof lifts open or the moonroof opens from the front, sliding back under the roof. The moonroof opens and closes whilst the switch is pressed.

Switch on the ignition to operate the power moonroof.

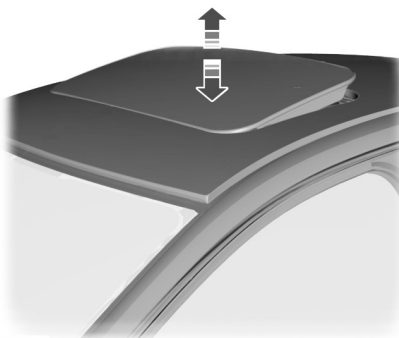
The power moonroof is operated by a switch located between the sun visors.

## Opening and closing the moonroof



E72188

## Tilting the moonroof



E72189

## Opening and closing the moonroof automatically

**Note:** When opening automatically, the moonroof will stop about 8 cm from the fully opened position. This position reduces the buffeting noise which is sometimes heard when the moonroof is fully open. The moonroof will only stop automatically in this position when the moonroof is opened automatically.

# Climate Control

To open or close the moonroof automatically press either side of the switch to the second action point and release it completely. Press again to stop.

When the closed position is reached, the moonroof stops automatically.

## Moonroof anti-trap protection

### WARNINGS



The anti-trap function is deactivated until the memory has been reset. Careless closing of the window can cause injuries.



Careless closing of the power moonroof can override the anti-trap protection and cause injuries.

The moonroof will stop automatically while closing and reverse some distance if there is an obstacle in the way.

To override anti-trap protection when there is a resistance, e. g. in the winter, proceed as follows:

### WARNING



While the moonroof is being closed for the third time, the anti-trap function is disabled. Make sure there are no obstacles in the way of the closing moonroof.

Close the moonroof a third time to the resistance. The anti-trap function is disabled and the moonroof cannot be closed automatically. The moonroof will override the resistance and can then be closed fully.

If the moonroof does not close after the third attempt, have it checked by an expert.

## Moonroof safety mode

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the closing moonroof.

If the system detects a malfunction, it enters a safety mode. The moonroof will move for only about 0.5 seconds at a time and then stop again. Close the moonroof by pressing the button again when the moonroof stops moving. When the rear of the moonroof is lifted, lift the rear all the way and then close the moonroof. Have the system checked by an expert immediately.

## Moonroof relearning

### WARNING



The anti-trap function is not active during this procedure. Make sure that there are no obstacles in the way of the closing moonroof.

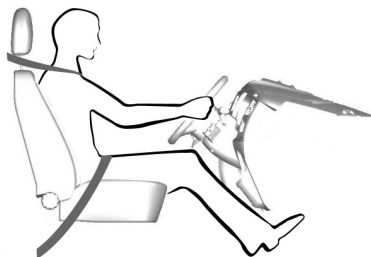
In case the moonroof no longer closes properly, follow this relearning procedure:

- Tilt the rear of the moonroof as far as possible. Release the button.
- Press and hold the same button again for 30 seconds until you see the moonroof move.
- Release the button and immediately press and hold it again. The moonroof will close, open fully and then close again. Do not release the button before the moonroof has reached the closed position for the second time.

If the button is not pressed continuously, the relearning function will be interrupted. Start the procedure once more from the beginning.

# Seats

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



E68595

### WARNINGS



Do not adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving.



Only when you use the safety belt properly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect.

- bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

### WARNINGS



Raise the rear head restraint when the rear seat is occupied by a passenger.



Do not remove the front head restraints when the front seats are in use.



When using a forward facing child restraint on a rear seat, always remove the head restraint from that seat.

## Adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

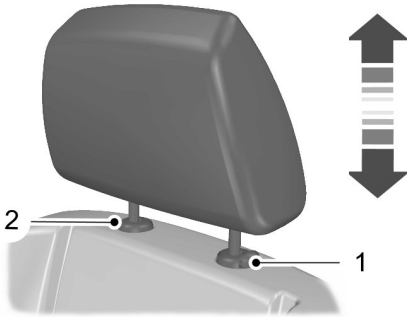
When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a collision. We recommend that you:

- sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.
- adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forwards as possible, remaining comfortable.
- keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 250 millimeters (10 inches) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

# Seats

## Removing the head restraints

### Front head restraints



E140447

Press locking button 1 and at the same time release the retaining clip 2 using a suitable implement.

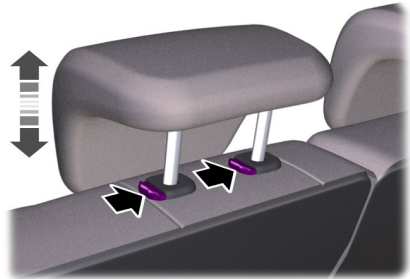
### Rear outer head restraints



E135437

Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

### Rear inner head restraint



E135401

Press the locking buttons and remove the head restraint.

## MANUAL SEATS

### Moving the seats backwards and forwards



E130249

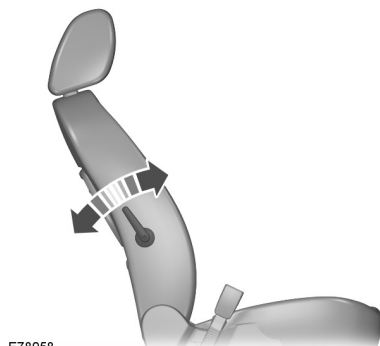
### WARNING



Rock the seat backwards and forwards after releasing the lever to make sure that it is fully engaged in its catch.

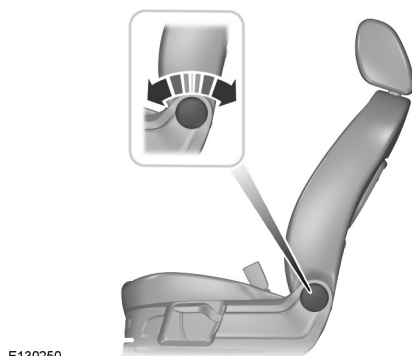
# Seats

## Adjusting the lumbar support



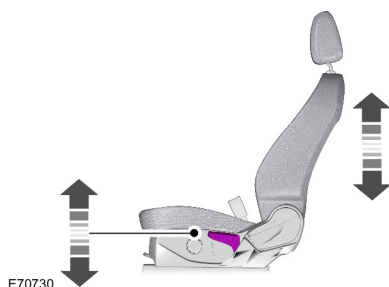
E78058

## Adjusting the angle of the seatback



E130250

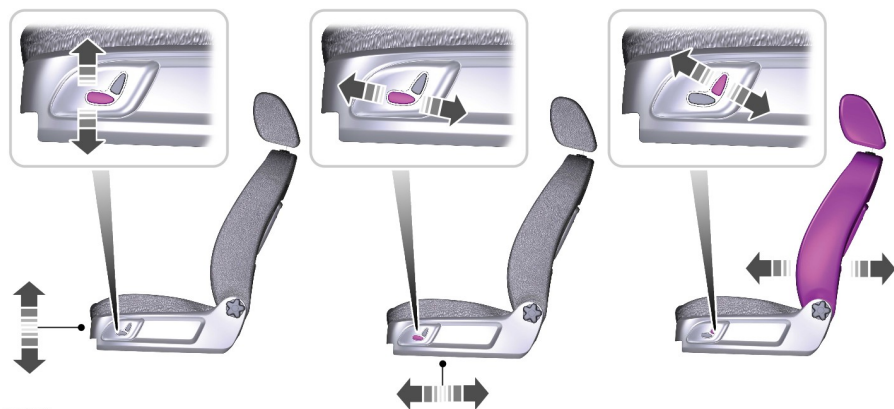
## Adjusting the height of the driver's seat



E70730

# Seats

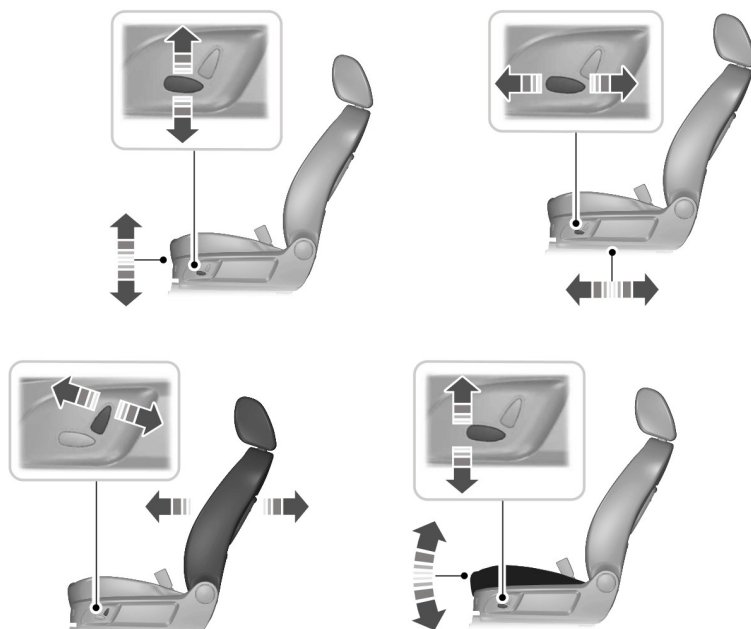
## POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 6-WAY POWER SEATS



E78060

# Seats

## POWER SEATS - VEHICLES WITH: 8-WAY POWER SEATS



E141827

# Seats

## Adjust the length of the seat cushion



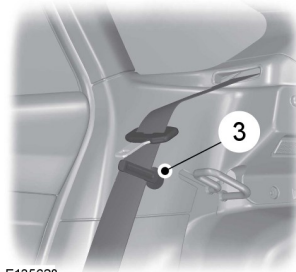
E78816

Press the locking handle underneath the cushion extension and slide the extension forward or backward.



E135629

1. Press and hold the unlock buttons.
2. Push the seatback forwards.



E135628

## REAR SEATS

### WARNINGS



When folding the seatbacks down and up, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seatback and seat frame.



Make sure that the seats and the seatbacks are secure and fully engaged in their catches.

## Folding the rear seatbacks forwards

### WARNING



Lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 108).




**Note:** Make sure that the safety belt is fully tightened into the retractor.

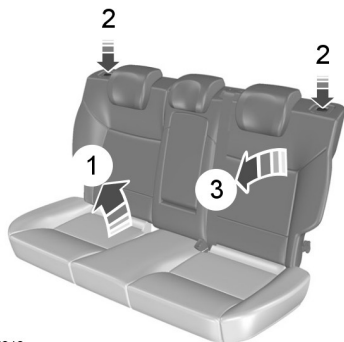
3. Place the safety belts in the clips on the outboard trim.

# Seats

## Folding the seat cushions and the rear seatbacks forwards

### WARNINGS

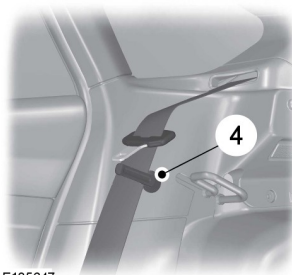
-  Make sure the red indicator is not showing when you engage the seat in the catches.
-  Lower the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 108).
-  When inserting your fingers between the seat cushion and seatback, take care not to get your fingers caught on the ISOFIX anchor points and bracket. See **ISOFIX Anchor Points** (page 22).



E135646

**Note:** Hold the cushion edge to avoid the ISOFIX anchor points and brackets.

1. Insert your fingers between the seat cushion and seatback and fold the seat cushion forwards.
2. Press and hold the unlock buttons.
3. Push the seatback forwards.




E135647

**Note:** Make sure that the safety belt is fully tightened into the retractor.

4. Place the safety belts in the clips on the outboard trim.


## Folding the seatbacks up

### WARNING

-  When folding the seatbacks up, make sure that the belts are visible to an occupant and not caught behind the seat.

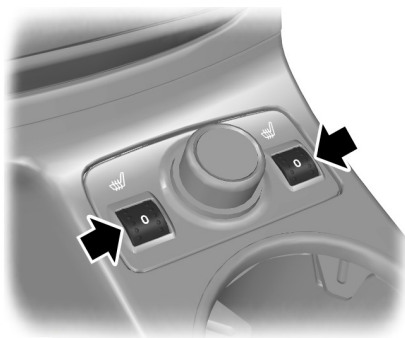
## HEATED SEATS

### CAUTION

-  Operating this function with the engine off will drain the battery.

## Seats

---



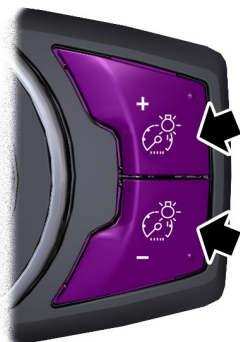
E130471

The maximum temperature is reached after five or six minutes. It is regulated thermostatically.

The seat heating will operate only when the ignition is on.

## Convenience features

### INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E132712

Press repeatedly or press and hold until the desired level is reached.

**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer will set the illuminated components to the maximum setting automatically.

### CLOCK

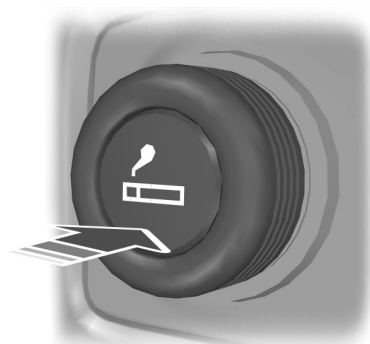
See **Information Displays** (page 79).

### CIGAR LIGHTER

#### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- ⚠ Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E132415

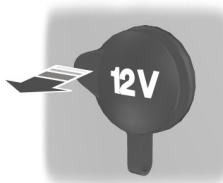
Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

### AUXILIARY POWER POINTS

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

**Note:** You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances that have a maximum current rating of 10 Amperes. Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E78056

Auxiliary power sockets are located in the center console and in the luggage compartment.

## Convenience features

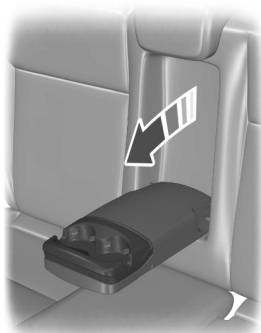
### CUP HOLDERS

#### WARNING



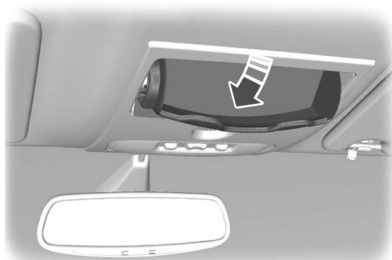
Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders when the vehicle is moving.

### Rear seat armrest

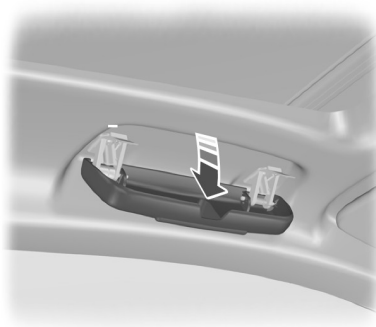


E132505

### GLASSES HOLDER



E75193



E91508

### AUDIO INPUT JACK

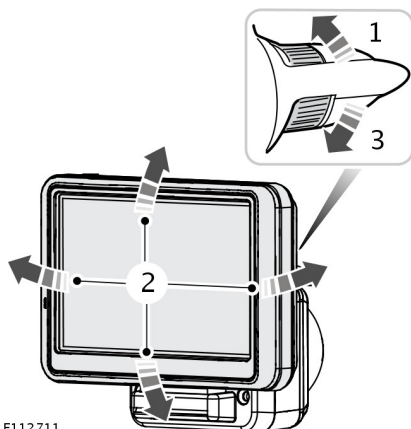
You can find the socket in the glove box or the center console. See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 270).

### USB PORT

You can find the socket in the glove box or the center console. See **SYNC™** (page 272).

### SATELLITE NAVIGATION UNIT HOLDER

#### Adjusting the holder



E112711

1. Unlock.
2. Adjust the holder to the desired position.
3. Lock.

**Note:** Make sure that the navigation unit holder is locked in position.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### General points on starting

If the battery has been disconnected the vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approx. 8 kilometers (5 miles) after reconnecting the battery.

This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. Any unusual driving characteristics during this period may be disregarded.

### Starting the engine by towing or pushing

#### WARNING



To prevent damage you must not push or tow start your vehicle. Use booster cables and a booster battery.

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 217).

## IGNITION SWITCH

#### WARNING



Never return the key to position **0** or **I** when the vehicle is in motion.



E72128

**0** The ignition is off.

**I** The ignition and all main electrical circuits are disabled.

**Note:** Do not leave the ignition key in this position for too long to avoid discharging the battery.

**II** The ignition is switched on. All electrical circuits are operational. Warning lamps and indicators illuminate. This is the key position when driving. You must also select it when being towed.

**III** The starter motor is activated. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

## KEYLESS STARTING

#### WARNINGS



The keyless starting system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.

See **Steering Wheel Lock** (page 121).

**Note:** The ignition may automatically switch off after a period of time if your vehicle has been left unattended with the ignition on. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging.

**Note:** A valid passive key must be located inside the vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

**Note:** To start your engine you must also fully depress the brake or clutch pedal, depending on the transmission fitted.



E85766

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Ignition on

Press the button once. All electrical circuits are operational, warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

## Starting with manual transmission

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start will stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Briefly press the button.

## Starting with automatic transmission

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
3. Briefly press the button.

## Starting a diesel engine

**Note:** Engine cranking may not commence until the engine glow plug cycle has been completed. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

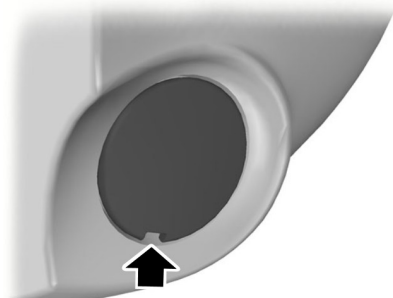
**Note:** Continue to press the clutch or brake pedal until engine cranking begins.

## Failure to start

The passive starting system will not function if:

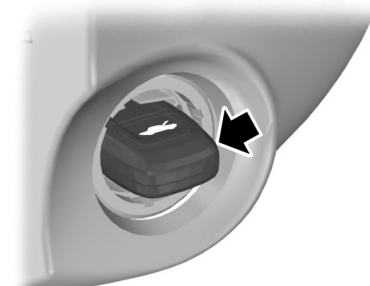
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

If you are unable to start your vehicle carry out the following procedure.



E87381

1. Carefully prise out the cover.



E85767

2. Insert the key into the key holder.



E85766

3. With the key in this position you can press the button to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary

**Note:** The ignition, all electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators will be switched off.

### Manual transmission

Briefly press the button.

### Automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P.
2. Briefly press the button.

## Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving

### WARNING



Switching off the engine when the vehicle is still moving will result in a loss of brake and steering assistance. The steering will not be locked, but higher effort will be required. When the ignition is switched off some electrical circuits, warning lamps and indicators may also be OFF.

Press and hold the button or press twice within two seconds.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK

### WARNING



Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

To lock the steering wheel:

1. Remove the key from the ignition switch.
2. Rotate the steering wheel slightly to engage the lock.

To unlock the steering wheel:

1. Insert the key in the ignition switch.
2. Turn the key to position I.

**Note:** You may need to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking if there is a steering wheel load applied.

## STEERING WHEEL LOCK - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Your vehicle has an electronically controlled steering wheel lock that operates automatically.

The system will lock the steering wheel after a short period of time once you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside your vehicle, or when you lock your vehicle.

**Note:** The system will not lock the steering wheel when the ignition is on or while your vehicle is moving.

### Unlocking the Steering Wheel

Switch the ignition on to unlock the steering wheel.

**Note:** You may have to rotate the steering wheel slightly to assist unlocking.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time, for example 10 seconds. The number of start attempts is limited to approximately six. If you exceed this limit, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Cold or hot engine

### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

**Note:** Releasing the brake pedal during engine start may stop the engine cranking and return to ignition on.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

### All vehicles

If the engine does not start, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -25°C (-13°F), press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

## Flooded engine

### Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position P or N.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Fully depress the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine.

### All vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

## Engine idle speed after starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting will vary depending on the engine temperature.

The idle speed is automatically increased when the engine is cold this is to heat the catalytic converter. This keeps the vehicle emissions to an absolute minimum.

The idle speed will slowly decrease to the normal level as the catalytic converter warms up.

## STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - E85

For general information on starting a gasoline engine. See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 121).

### Starting at low ambient temperatures

When the temperature is lower than -10°C (14°F) and the vehicle is filled with E85, an engine block heater should be used to facilitate starting. See **Engine Block Heater** (page 124). Failure to do this will result in a non start.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

If the temperature is expected to remain below  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $14^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), it is recommended that you increase the proportion of gasoline in the tank by topping up with 95 octane unleaded gasoline if the tank is not already full. About 10 liters (2.2 gallons) of gasoline will reduce the proportion of E85 in a  $\frac{3}{4}$  full tank from 85% to 70% and will considerably improve cold start capability.

If, at very low temperatures, the tank is filled with only E85 and there is no way to use an engine block heater, you may experience difficulties starting the engine.

If the engine fails to start, proceed as follows:

1. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.
2. Turn the ignition key to position III.

## CAUTION



Release the ignition key as soon as the engine has started.

3. Gradually release the accelerator pedal after five seconds of engine cranking or as the engine speed rises.

If the engine fails to start, repeat steps 1, 2 and 3, or connect an engine block heater for two hours before attempting another start.

During starting, the fuel injectors are turned off as long as the accelerator pedal is depressed. This can be used to drain excessive fuel from the intake manifold after several unsuccessful starting attempts.

If the battery has been disconnected or after the fuel type has been changed, the idle speed may be irregular. This will improve after 10 to 30 seconds.

## STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

### Cold or hot engine

#### All vehicles

**Note:** When the temperature is below  $-15^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), you may need to crank the engine for up to 25 seconds.

**Note:** Continue cranking the engine until it starts.

**Note:** You can only operate the starter for a maximum of 30 seconds at a time.



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

#### Vehicles with manual transmission

**Note:** Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

#### Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Select park or neutral.
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

## DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The DPF forms part of the emissions reduction systems fitted to your vehicle. It filters harmful diesel particulates (soot) from the exhaust gas.

# Starting and Stopping the Engine

## Regeneration

### WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The DPF regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after DPF regeneration, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

### CAUTION



Avoid running out of fuel.

**Note:** During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to the high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

**Note:** After you have switched your engine off the fans may continue to run for a short period of time.

Unlike a normal filter which requires periodic replacement, the DPF has been designed to regenerate, or clean itself to maintain operating efficiency. The regeneration process takes place automatically. However, some driving conditions mean that you may need to support the regeneration process.

If you drive only short distances or your journeys contain frequent stopping and starting, where there is increased acceleration and deceleration, occasional trips with the following conditions will assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle at a constant speed, preferably on a main road or highway, for up to 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged idling and always observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch off the ignition.
- Use a lower gear than normal to maintain a higher engine speed during this journey, where appropriate.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

### Vehicles with a turbocharger

#### CAUTION



Do not switch the engine off when it is running at high speed. If you do, the turbocharger will continue running after the engine oil pressure has dropped to zero. This will lead to premature turbocharger bearing wear.

Release the accelerator pedal. Wait until the engine has reached idle speed and then switch it off.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

#### CAUTION



Make sure you disconnect the power cable from the engine heater connector before driving away.

**Note:** The engine heater connector is located in the front bumper.

## Starting and Stopping the Engine

---




E135813

Connect the engine heater for two to three hours before starting the engine.

# Auto-Start-Stop

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### CAUTION


 For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.


The system reduces fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions by shutting down the engine when the vehicle is idling, for example at traffic lights. The engine will automatically restart when the driver presses the clutch pedal or when required by a vehicle system, for example to recharge the battery.


To obtain maximum benefit from the system, move the gear lever to the neutral position and release the clutch pedal during any stop of longer than three seconds.

## USING START-STOP

### WARNINGS

 The engine may restart automatically if required by the system. See **Principle of Operation** (page 126).

 Switch the ignition off before opening the hood or carrying out any maintenance.

 Always switch the ignition off before leaving your vehicle, as the system may have shut down the engine but the ignition will still be live.

**Note:** The system only operates when the engine is warm and the outside temperature is between 0°C (32°F) and 30°C (86°F).

**Note:** If you stall the engine, and then depress the clutch pedal within a couple of seconds, the system will automatically restart the engine.

**Note:** The Start-stop indicator will illuminate green when the engine shuts down. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

**Note:** The Start-stop indicator will flash amber, requiring you to select neutral or depress the clutch pedal. In conjunction a message will be shown in the display.

**Note:** If the system detects a malfunction, it is deactivated. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

**Note:** If you have switched the system off, the switch will be illuminated.

**Note:** The system is on by default. To switch the system off, press the switch in the instrument panel. The system will only be de-activated for the current ignition cycle. To turn it on, press the switch again. For item location. See **At a Glance** (page 11).



### To stop the engine

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Move the gear lever to the neutral position.
3. Release the clutch pedal.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.

The system may not shut down the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- To maintain the interior climate.
- Low battery voltage.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The driver's door has been opened.

# Auto-Start-Stop

---

- Low engine operating temperature.
- Low brake system vacuum.
- If a road speed of 5 km/h (3 mph) has not been exceeded.
- The driver's safety belt has not been fastened.

## To re-start the engine

**Note:** *The gear lever must be in the neutral position.*

Depress the clutch pedal.

The system may automatically restart the engine under certain conditions, for example:

- Low battery voltage.
- To maintain the interior climate.

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

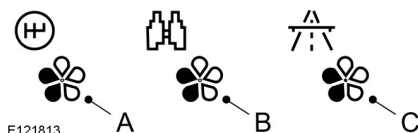
The system assists the driver to drive more efficiently by constantly monitoring characteristics of gear changing, anticipation of traffic conditions and speeds on freeways and open roads.

**Note:** *These efficiency values do not result in a defined fuel consumption figure. It might vary as it is not only related to these driving disciplines but also influenced by many other factors such as short journeys and cold starts.*

**Note:** *Frequent short journeys, where the engine does not fully warm up, will also increase fuel consumption.*

The value of these characteristics is represented by petals shown in the display, with five petals being the most efficient. The more efficiently you drive, the better the rating, and the better your overall fuel consumption.

### Type 1



- A Gear shifting
- B Anticipation
- C Efficient speed

### Gear shifting

Using the highest drivable gear appropriate for the road conditions will improve fuel consumption.

### Anticipation

Adjusting your vehicle speed and the distance to other vehicles without the need for heavy braking or acceleration will improve fuel consumption.

### Efficient speed

Higher speeds use more fuel. Reducing your cruising speed on open roads will improve fuel consumption.

### Type 2 and 3

The relevant information will be shown in the display.

## USING ECO MODE

The system is accessed using the relevant information display menu. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

### Resetting Eco mode


Reset the average fuel consumption.


**Note:** *New values may take a short time to calculate.*

# Fuel and Refueling

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS


### WARNINGS

 Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

 Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

## FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

### CAUTION

 Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.


**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*


Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228, or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).


## FUEL QUALITY - E85


### WARNINGS

 Do not modify the fuel system configuration or the components in the system.

 Do not replace the fuel system or the components with parts not specially designed to be used with E85.

### CAUTIONS

 Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

 Do not use methanol instead of E85.

**Note:** *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel without additives or other engine treatments.*

**Note:** *When using E85, you may experience a higher fuel consumption.*

**Note:** *Your vehicle will operate well on commercial quality 95 octane unleaded gasoline, but only high quality E85 offers the same protection and performance.*


Use **minimum 95 octane unleaded** gasoline that meets the specification defined by **EN 228**, or equivalent. You can also use a mixture of unleaded gasoline and E85.

## Long-term storage


Due to small amounts of corrosive impurities that may be found in the E85, it is recommended that you fill the tank with only 95 octane unleaded gasoline prior to long-term storage of your vehicle.

## FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

### WARNING

 Do not mix diesel with oil, gasoline or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.

### CAUTIONS

 Do not add kerosene, paraffin or gasoline to diesel. This could cause damage to the fuel system.

# Fuel and Refueling

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Use diesel that meets the specification defined by **EN 590**, or the relevant national specification.

**Note:** We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

**Note:** The use of additives or other engine treatments not approved by Ford is not recommended.

**Note:** We do not recommend the prolonged use of additives intended to prevent fuel waxing.

## Long-term storage

Most diesel fuels contain bio-diesel, it is recommended to fill the tank with purely mineral diesel (where available) or add an anti-oxidant prior to long-term storage of your vehicle exceeding two months. Your dealer can help you with a suitable anti-oxidant.

## CATALYTIC CONVERTER

### WARNING

- ⚠ Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

## Driving with a catalytic converter

### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Avoid running out of fuel.
- ⚠ Do not crank the engine for long periods.
- ⚠ Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 217).
- ⚠ Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

## REFUELING

### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

## REFUELING - E85

### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician immediately.

After refueling, allow 5 minutes of normal engine operation above 48 km/h (30 mph) to reduce the risk of an increased engine restart time.

## FUEL CONSUMPTION

The CO<sub>2</sub> and fuel consumption figures are derived from laboratory tests according to EEC Directive 80/1268/EEC and subsequent amendments and are carried out by all vehicle manufacturers.


# Fuel and Refueling


They are intended as a comparison between makes and models of vehicles. They are not intended to represent the real world fuel consumption you may get from your vehicle. Real world fuel consumption is governed by many factors including; driving style, high speed driving, stop/start driving, air conditioning usage, the accessories fitted and towing etc.


Your Ford dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.


## FUEL FILLER DOOR


### WARNINGS


 Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with the incorrect fuel. This could damage the engine. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer immediately.

 Do not use any kind of flames or heat near the fuel system. The fuel system is under pressure. There is a risk of injury if the fuel system is leaking.

 If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the fuel filler flap briefly from a distance not less than 8 inches (200 millimeters).

 We recommend that you wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pipe nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

 Stop refueling after the fuel nozzle stops the second time. Additional fuel will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank which could lead to fuel overflowing. Fuel spillage could be hazardous to other road users.

 Do not remove the nozzle from its fully inserted position during the entire refueling process.

**Note:** Your vehicle does not have a fuel filler cap.

### Type 1



E135934

### Type 2

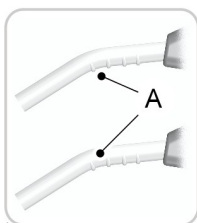


E135935

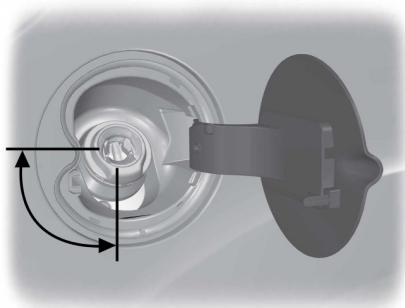
**Note:** On vehicles with five doors, press the flap to open it.

1. Open the door fully until it engages.

# Fuel and Refueling



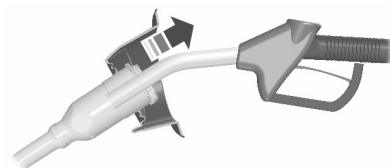
3. Hold the nozzle in position B during refilling. Holding the nozzle in position A may affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



E139202

E139204

4. Operate the nozzle within the area shown.



E119081

5. Slightly raise the fuel nozzle to remove it.

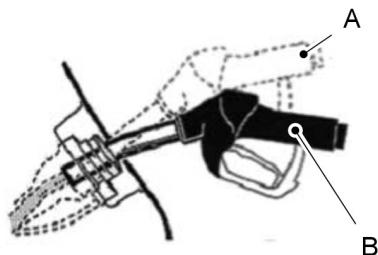
## Refueling with a fuel can

Use the funnel which is located in the glove box.

E139202

**Note:** When you insert the correct size fuel nozzle, a spring loaded inhibitor will open. This helps to avoid filling up with the wrong fuel.

2. Insert the fuel nozzle up to and including the first notch on the nozzle A. Keep it resting on the cover of the fuel pipe opening.



E139203

# Fuel and Refueling

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Fuel Consumption Figures

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
1.0L EcoBoost (73kW/100PS), 5-door	5.9 (47.9)	4.1 (68.9)	4.8 (58.9)	109
1.0L EcoBoost (73kW/100PS), 4-door and wagon	6 (47.1)	4.2 (67.3)	4.9 (57.6)	112
1.0L EcoBoost (92kW/125PS), 5-door	6.3 (44.8)	4.2 (67.3)	5 (56.5)	114
1.0L EcoBoost (92kW/125PS), 4-door and wagon	6.4 (44.1)	4.4 (64.2)	5.1 (55.4)	117
1.0L EcoBoost (Econetic), 5-door	5.2 (54.3)	3.8 (74.3)	4.3 (65.7)	99
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 5-door, vehicles with manual transmission	8 (35.3)	4.7 (60.1)	5.9 (47.9)	136
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 4-door and wagon, vehicles with manual transmission	8.1 (34.9)	4.8 (58.9)	6 (47.1)	139
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, vehicles with DPS6 automatic transmission	9.3 (30.4)	4.8 (58.9)	6.4 (44.1)	149
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles without start-stop	8.3 (34)	5 (56.5)	6.2 (45.6)	144
1.6L EcoBoost, vehicles with start-stop	7.7 (36.7)	5 (56.5)	6 (47.1)	139
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, vehicles with manual transmission	9.6 (29.4)	5 (56.5)	6.7 (42.2)	149

## Fuel and Refueling

Variant	Urban	Extra-Urban	Combined	CO2 Emissions
	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, vehicles with automatic transmission	9.1 (31)	4.9 (57.6)	6.4 (44.1)	156
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4	9.9 (28.5)	5.6 (50.4)	7.2 (39.2)	169
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles without start-stop	5.7 (49.6)	3.7 (76.3)	4.5 (62.8)	117
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi, vehicles with start-stop	5.1 (55.4)	3.7 (76.3)	4.2 (67.3)	109
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with manual transmission	6.3 (44.8)	4.2 (67.3)	5 (56.5)	129
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW, vehicles with automatic transmission	6.8 (41.5)	4.4 (64.2)	5.3 (53.3)	139

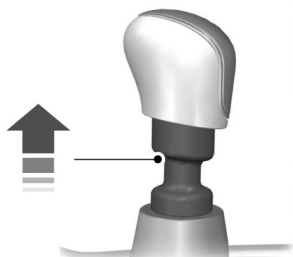
# Transmission

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION

### Selecting reverse gear

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Do not engage reverse gear when the vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.



E99067

On some vehicles it is necessary to raise the collar whilst selecting reverse gear.

### Vehicles with 5-speed transmission

#### CAUTION

- ⚠ Fully depress the clutch pedal and wait for three seconds before you select reverse gear.

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Selector lever positions



E133124

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| P | Park                           |
| R | Reverse                        |
| N | Neutral                        |
| D | Drive                          |
| S | Sport mode and manual shifting |
| + | Manual shift up                |
| - | Manual shift down              |

#### WARNING

- ⚠ Apply the brakes before moving the selector lever and keep them applied until you are ready to move off.

Press the button on the selector lever to change to each position.

The selector lever position will be shown in the information display.

### Park

#### WARNINGS

- ⚠ Select park only when your vehicle is stationary.

# Transmission

## WARNINGS



**Apply the parking brake and select park before leaving your vehicle.** Make sure that the selector lever is latched in position.

**Note:** An audible warning will sound if you open the driver's door and you have not selected park.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels and the transmission is locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

## Reverse

## WARNINGS



Select reverse only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.



Always come to a complete stop before shifting out of reverse.

Select reverse to allow the vehicle to move backwards.

## Neutral

In this position, power is not transmitted to the drive wheels but the transmission is not locked. You can start the engine with the selector lever in this position.

## Drive

**Note:** A shift will occur only when the vehicle speed and the engine speed are appropriate.

**Note:** You may temporarily override the current gear selected using the **+** and **-** buttons.

Select drive to shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will select the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and driver input.

## Sport mode and manual shifting

### Sport Mode

**Note:** In **Sport** mode the transmission operates as normal but gears are selected more quickly and at higher engine speeds.

**Note:** In **Sport** mode **S** will be displayed on the instrument panel.

Activate **Sport** mode by moving the selector lever to position **S**. **Sport** mode will remain active until either you shift manually up or down the gears using **+** and **-**, or return the selector lever to position **D**.

### Manual shifting

## WARNING



Do not hold the buttons permanently in **-** or **+**.

## CAUTION



The transmission will automatically downshift when the engine speed is too low.

Press the **-** button to shift down and press the **+** button to shift up.

Gears may be skipped by pressing the buttons repeatedly at short intervals.

Manual mode also provides a kickdown function. See **Kickdown**.

## Hints on driving with an automatic transmission

## CAUTION



Do not idle the engine for long periods of time in drive with the brakes applied.

# Transmission

## Moving off

1. Release the parking brake.
2. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

## Stopping

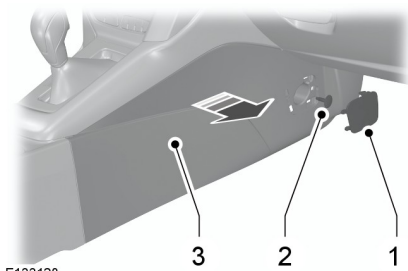
1. Release the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Select neutral or park.

## Kickdown

Press the accelerator pedal fully with the selector lever in the drive position to select the next lowest gear for optimum performance. Release the accelerator pedal when you no longer require kickdown.

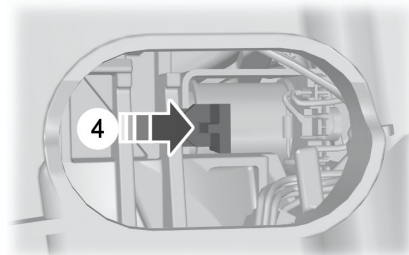
## Emergency park position release lever

Use the lever to move the selector lever from the park position in the event of an electrical malfunction or if your vehicle has a flat battery.



E133128

1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Remove the retaining clip.
3. Remove the center console side panel.



E133129

**Note:** *The lever is white.*

4. Apply the brake pedal. Using a suitable tool press and hold the lever forward while pulling the selector lever out of the park position and into the neutral position.

# Brakes

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

**Note:** Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash if you brake heavily.

**Note:** Occasional brake noise is normal and often does not indicate a concern. In normal operation, the system may emit occasional or intermittent squeal or groan noises when the brakes are applied. Such noises are usually caused by environmental conditions such as cold, heat, moisture, road dust, salt or mud.

### Disc brakes

Wet brake discs result in reduced braking efficiency. Dab the brake pedal when driving from a car wash to remove the film of water.

### ABS

#### WARNING



The ABS does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

The ABS helps you to maintain full steering and directional stability when you brake heavily in an emergency, by preventing the road wheels from locking.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

**Note:** When the system is operating, the brake pedal will pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

The ABS will not eliminate the risks when:

- you drive too close to the vehicle in front of you
- the vehicle is aquaplaning
- you take corners too fast
- the road surface is poor.

## PARKING BRAKE

#### WARNING



Vehicles with an automatic transmission should always be left with the selector lever in position **P (Park)**.

- Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
- Pull the parking brake lever up smartly to its fullest extent.
- Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.
- If your vehicle is parked on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear or **P (Park)** and turn the steering wheel towards the curb.

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal firmly, pull the lever up slightly, depress the release button and push the lever down.

# Stability Control

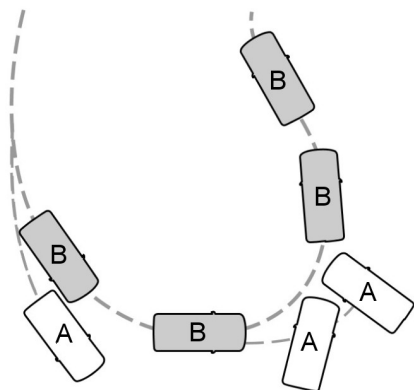
## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### Electronic stability program (ESP)

#### WARNING



ESP does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



E72903

- A without ESP
- B with ESP

The ESP supports stability when the vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. This is performed by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque as needed.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque and may brake individual wheels if they spin when you accelerate. This improves your ability to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.

### Stability control (ESP) warning lamp

The ESP warning lamp will flash when the system is operating. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

### Emergency brake assist

#### WARNING



Emergency brake assist does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Emergency brake assist will detect when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It will provide maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Emergency brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

### Trailer stability control

#### WARNING



Trailer stability control does not relieve you of your responsibility to tow with due care and attention.

Trailer stability control is an enhanced feature of ESP, and automatically detects when an attached trailer starts to sway.

If this situation occurs, the system will automatically brake individual wheels to stabilize the trailer and vehicle. In case a very severe sway is detected, the engine torque will be reduced and the vehicle will be slowed automatically.

# Stability Control

---

## USING STABILITY CONTROL - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.6L/2.0L DURATEC-HE (MI4), 1.6L DIESEL/2.0L DIESEL

**Note:** *The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.*

To turn the system off and on. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

## USING STABILITY CONTROL - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### WARNING



If you switch stability control off, active city stop will also be switched off.

**Note:** *The system will be switched on automatically every time you switch the ignition on.*

**Note:** *You can also turn the system off and on using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).*

The switch is located in the instrument panel. See **At a Glance** (page 11).

### Switching sport mode on

**Note:** *Stability control is only reduced and not switched off completely.*

Press the switch. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the switch again to return the system to normal mode.

### Switching the system off

Press and hold the switch for approximately five seconds. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display.

# Hill Start Assist

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system makes it easier to pull away when the vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system is active, the vehicle will remain stationary on the slope for a short time after you release the brake pedal. During this time, you have time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal and pull away. The brakes are released automatically once the engine has developed sufficient drive to prevent the vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

### WARNING



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave the vehicle, always apply the parking brake and select first or reverse gear.

## USING HILL START ASSIST

The system is activated automatically when you stop your vehicle on a slope greater than 3%. The system operates with the vehicle facing downhill if reverse gear is selected and with the vehicle facing uphill if any forward gear is selected.

### Vehicles with manual transmission only

The system can be switched on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

### Activating the system

#### WARNINGS



You must remain in the vehicle once you have activated the system.

#### WARNINGS



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.



If a malfunction is detected when the system is active, the system will be deactivated and a message will be shown in the display. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

You can activate the system only if the following conditions have been met:

- The engine is running.
- The system is switched on.
- On vehicles with manual transmission, the clutch pedal is pressed.
- No failure mode is present.

### To activate the system:

1. Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. If the sensors detect that the vehicle is on a slope the system will be activated automatically.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, the vehicle will remain on the slope without rolling away for a short time. This hold time will automatically be extended if you are in the process of driving off.
4. Drive off in the normal manner. The brakes will be released automatically.

### Deactivating the system

To deactivate the system, perform **one** of the following:

## Hill Start Assist

---

- Wait for a short time until the system deactivates automatically.
- If a forward gear was selected when the system became active, select reverse gear.
- If reverse gear was selected when the system became active, select a forward gear.

# Parking Aids

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



Vehicles fitted with a trailer tow module not approved by us may not correctly detect obstacles.



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The parking aid does not detect obstacles moving away from the vehicle. They will only be detected shortly after they start to move towards the vehicle again.



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the sensors briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimeters (8 inches).



Parking aid sends tones via the audio system fitted and approved by us. If this is not working the parking aid system will not work.

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with a tow ball arm, the rear parking aid is deactivated automatically when any trailer lamps (or lighting boards) are connected to the 13-pin socket via a trailer tow module we have approved.

**Note:** Keep the sensors free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects.

**Note:** The parking aid may emit false tones if it detects a signal using the same frequency as the sensors or if the vehicle is fully laden.

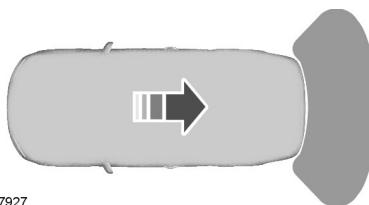
**Note:** The outer sensors may detect the side walls of a garage. If the distance between the outer sensor and the side wall remains constant for three seconds, the tone will switch off. As you continue, the inner sensors will detect rearward objects.

## PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: REAR PARKING AID

### WARNING



The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

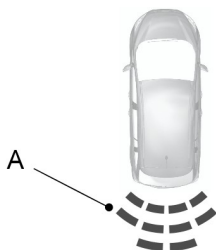


E77927

The parking aid is automatically activated when you select reverse gear with the ignition switched on.

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimeters (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper and approximately 50 centimeters (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone.

# Parking Aids



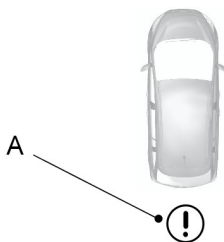
E130178

A Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.

A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the rear bumper.

**Note:** On Vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimeters (18 inches) from the rear bumper.



E130179

A Malfunction indicator.

**Note:** If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.



E130180

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the system is disabled.

## PARKING AID - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT AND REAR PARKING AID

### WARNING



The parking aid does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### Switching the parking aid on and off

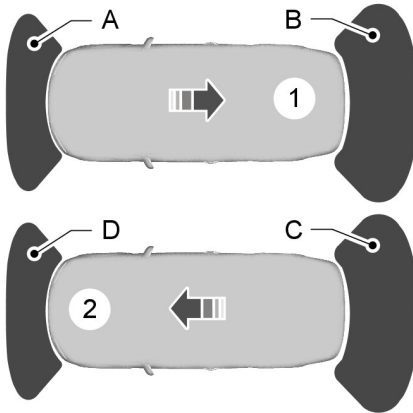
The parking aid is per default off. To switch the parking aid on, select reverse gear or press the switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11).

The light in the switch illuminates when the parking aid is activated.

To turn it off, press the switch again.

# Parking Aids

## Maneuvering with the parking aid



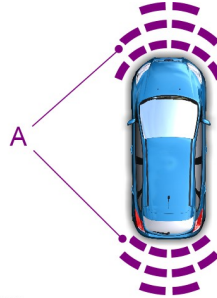
E130381

- 1 Reverse gear selected
- 2 Neutral or forward gear selected
- A Display and tone
- B Display and tone
- C Display only
- D Display and tone

You will hear an intermittent tone at a distance of approximately 150 centimeters (59 inches) between the obstacle and rear bumper, approximately 80 centimeters (31 inches) between the obstacle and front bumper and approximately 50 centimeters (20 inches) to the side. Decreasing the distance accelerates the intermittent tone. A continuous tone will start at a distance of less than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the front or rear bumper.

**Note:** On vehicles with a tow bar fitted and approved by us the continuous tone will start at a distance of 45 centimeters (18 inches) from the rear bumper.

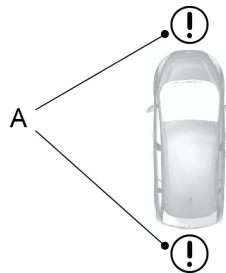
You will hear an alternating tone from the front and rear if obstacles are closer than 30 centimeters (11 inches) to the front and rear bumpers.



E130382

A Distance Indicator.

As the distance decreases the indicator moves towards the vehicle.



E130383

A Malfunction indicator.

**Note:** If a malfunction is indicated the system will be disabled. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician.

## Parking Aids

---



E130180

A trailer symbol indicates there is a trailer attached and the rear sensors are disabled.

# Rear view camera

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The camera is a visual aid for use when reversing.

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

### CAUTIONS



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, only spray the camera briefly from a distance not less than 20 centimeters (8 inches).



Do not apply pressure to the camera.

**Note:** *Keep the camera free from dirt, ice and snow. Do not clean with sharp objects, degreaser, wax or organic products. Use only a soft cloth.*

During operation, guide lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and approximate distance from rearward objects.

## REAR VIEW CAMERA

### WARNINGS



The operation of the camera may vary depending on the ambient temperature, vehicle and road conditions.



The distances shown in the display may differ from the actual distance.



Do not place objects in front of the camera.

The camera is located on the luggage compartment lid near the handle.



E99105

## Activating the rear view camera

### CAUTION



The camera may not detect objects that are close to the vehicle.

With the ignition and the audio unit switched on:

1. Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See **At a Glance** (page 11). Or,
2. Engage reverse gear.

The image is displayed on the screen.

The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is activated.

The camera may not operate correctly in the following conditions:

- Dark areas.
- Intense light.
- If the ambient temperature increases or decreases rapidly.
- If the camera is wet, for example in rain or high humidity.
- If the camera's view is obstructed, for example by mud.

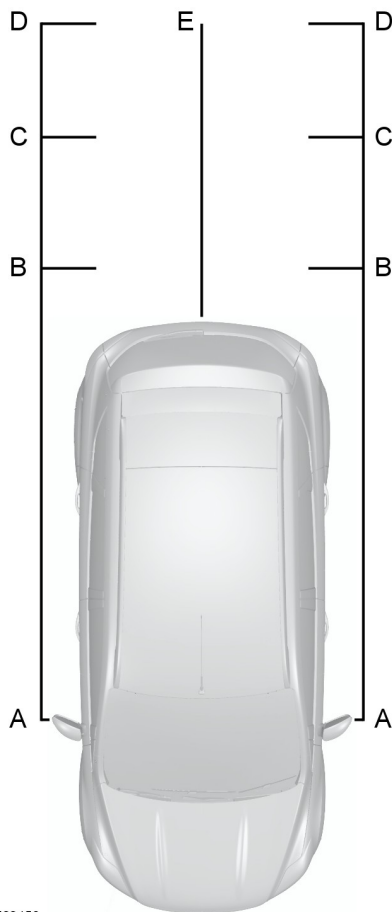
## Rear view camera

### Using the display

#### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Obstacles above the camera position will not be shown. Inspect the area behind your vehicle if necessary.
- ⚠ Marks are for general guidance only, and are calculated for vehicles in maximum load conditions on an even road surface.

The lines show a projected vehicle path (based on the current steering wheel angle) and the distance from the exterior mirrors and rear bumper.



E99458

- A Exterior mirror clearance - 0.1 meter (4 inches)
- B Red - up to 0.3 (12 inches)
- C Amber - 0.3 - 0.6 meter (12 - 24 inches)

## Rear view camera

---

- D Green - 0.6 - 0.9 meter (24 - 35 inches)
- E Amber - center line of the projected vehicle path

**Note:** *The green line is extended from 0.9 meter (35 inches) up to a distance of 3.2 meters (126 inches).*

**Note:** *When reversing with a trailer, the lines on the screen are not shown. The camera will show the vehicle direction and not the trailer.*

### Deactivating the rear view camera

**Note:** *Disengage reverse gear. The display will stay on for a short period before switching off.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically switch off once the vehicle speed has reached approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).*

Press the parking aid switch in the instrument panel. For item location: See

**At a Glance** (page 11).

### Vehicles with parking aid

The display will additionally show a coloured distance bar. This guide indicates the distance from the rear bumper to the detected obstacle.

These are colour coded as follows:

- Green - 0.6 to 1.8 meters (24 - 71 inches).
- Amber - 0.3 to 0.6 meter (12 - 24 inches).
- Red - 0.3 meter (12 inches) or less.

# Active Park Assist

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



You must observe that the selected space remains clear of obstructions at all times in the manoeuvre.



Vehicles with overhanging loads, street furniture and other items may not be detected by the system. You must make sure that the selected space is suitable for parking.



Do not use the system if a trailer is attached to the vehicle.



Do not use the system if a bike rack is attached to the back of the vehicle.



Do not use the system if an overhanging item is attached to the roof.



If the manoeuvre is interrupted before completion, the system will be disabled. The steering wheel position will not indicate the true position of the steering and you will have to take control of the vehicle.



Make sure that loose clothing, your hands or your arms do not get caught in the rotating steering wheel.

The system will detect a suitable parallel parking space and steer the vehicle into the space. The system controls the steering while the driver controls the accelerator, transmission and brakes. The manoeuvre can be stopped at any time by holding the steering wheel or pressing the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 11).

The system will visually and audibly instruct the driver throughout the procedure to safely park the vehicle.

## USING ACTIVE PARK ASSIST

### CAUTIONS



The sensors may not detect objects in heavy rain or other conditions that cause disruptive reflections.



The sensors may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb ultrasonic waves.



The sensors may not detect the curb.

**Note:** If the traction control system is disabled active park assist will not be available. See **General Information** (page 79).

The system will not align the vehicle correctly if:

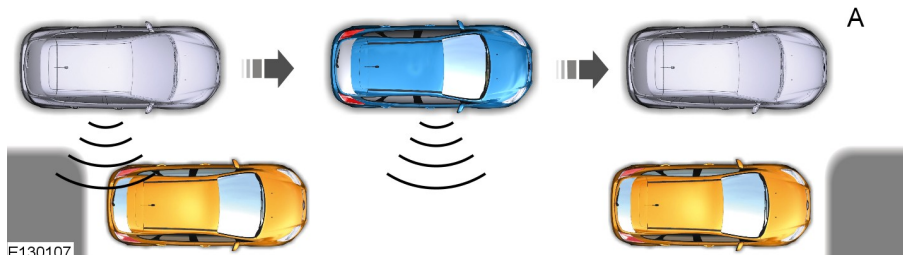
- a spare tire, or a tire worn significantly more than the other tires is used
- the factory installed tire size is not used on the vehicle
- the tires skid
- you allow the vehicle to roll
- the weather conditions are poor (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc).

## Active Park Assist

Move forwards at a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18 mph). Press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 11). Use the direction indicator lever to select searching either to the left-hand side or

right-hand side of the vehicle.

**Note:** If no selection is made via the direction indicator lever the system will default to the passenger side of the vehicle.



**Note:** To disable the chimes: See **Personalized Settings** (page 85).

The information and entertainment display will inform you and a chime will be heard when a suitable space is found. To park the vehicle, follow the instructions on the information and entertainment display.

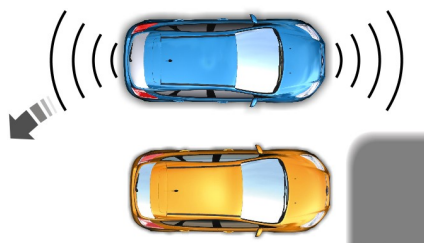
**Note:** The arrow symbols or graphics in the display indicate on which side of the vehicle the system will park. The display will also advise you when to select reverse gear.

Slow down and stop at approximately position **A**, then follow the system instructions.



### WARNING

**!** If a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) is exceeded the system will be disabled and you will need to take full control of the vehicle.

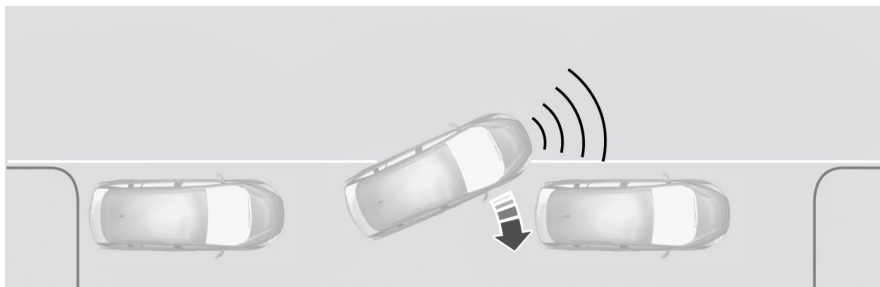


Move the vehicle backwards cautiously using the accelerator and brake pedals to control the vehicle. Parking aid warning tones will sound. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

You can take control of the maneuver by holding the steering wheel. A message may appear that the system can be resumed. To accept this message press the active park assist switch. See **At a Glance** (page 11).

## Active Park Assist

---



E130109

Move the vehicle forwards. Stop the vehicle when you hear a continuous tone.

Repeat the above steps until the vehicle is satisfactory parked. The display will indicate when the system has finished the maneuver.

# Cruise Control

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

### WARNING



Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, on twisty roads or when the road surface is slippery.

## Switching cruise control on



E130072

**Note:** The system is ready for you to set a speed.

## Setting a speed

Press the **SET+** switch or the **SET-** switch to store and maintain your current speed. The cruise control indicator will illuminate. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

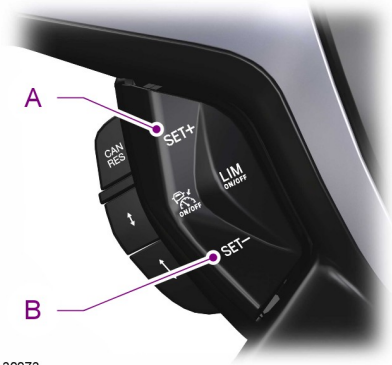
## Changing the set speed

### WARNING



When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes. Change down a gear and press the **SET-** switch to assist the system in maintaining the set speed.

**Note:** If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, you will return to the speed that you previously set.



E130073

- A Accelerate
- B Decelerate

# Cruise Control

---

## Cancelling the set speed

Press the brake pedal or pull the **CAN** switch.

**Note:** *The system will no longer control your speed. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate but the system will retain the speed that you previously set.*

## Resuming the set speed

Pull the **RES** switch.

The cruise control indicator will illuminate and the system will attempt to resume the speed that you previously set.

## Switching cruise control off



E130072

The system will not retain the speed that you previously set. The cruise control indicator will not illuminate.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system is not a collision warning or avoidance system. The separate forward alert function provides a collision warning and mitigation feature. See **Forward alert function** (page 159). You must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle in front.



When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when adaptive cruise control is used. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and intervene when adaptive cruise control is not maintaining a suitable speed or suitable distance.



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



The system does not brake for slow or stationary vehicles, pedestrians, objects in the road, oncoming and crossing vehicles.

**Note:** When adaptive cruise control is activated, you may hear some unusual sounds during automatic braking. This is normal and caused by the automatic braking system.

**Note:** Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors and additional lights which may prevent the sensor from operating.

The system is designed to help you maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. The system is intended to provide enhanced operation of the vehicle when following other vehicles which are in the same lane and traveling in the same direction.

The system is based on the use of a radar sensor which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle. This beam will detect any vehicle ahead within the system's range.

The radar sensor is mounted behind the front grille.

### CAUTIONS



Only use adaptive cruise control when conditions are favorable, for example on freeways and main roads with steady free flowing traffic.



Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.



Do not use on icy or slippery roads.



Do not use the system when entering or leaving a freeway.

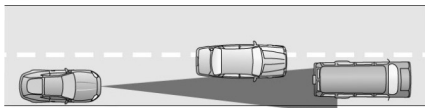


The radar sensor has a limited field of vision. In some situations it may detect a vehicle other than the one expected or not detect any vehicle at all.

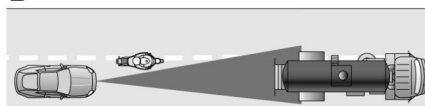
# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

## Detection beam issues

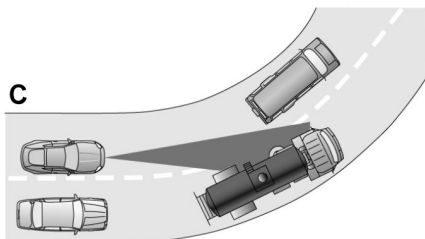
A



B



C



E71621

Detection issues can occur:

- With vehicles that edge into your lane that can only be detected once they have moved fully into your lane (**A**). Motorcycles may be detected late, or not at all. (**B**)
- With vehicles in front when going into and coming out of a bend (**C**). The detection beam will not follow sharp curves in the road.

In these cases the system may brake late or unexpectedly. You should stay alert and intervene if necessary.

## Automatic braking with ACC

### WARNINGS



You must take immediate action once alerted, as the adaptive cruise control braking will not be sufficient to keep a safe distance to the vehicle in front.



In some cases there may be no warning or the warning may be delayed. You should always apply the brakes when necessary.



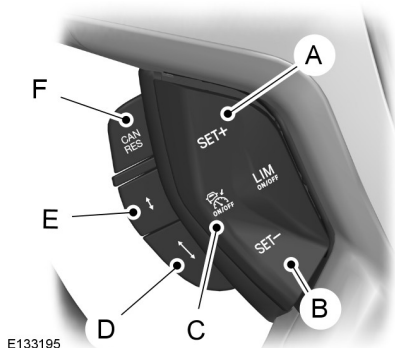
When following a vehicle in front of you, adaptive cruise control will not automatically decelerate to a stop.

The system will automatically brake for you, if required to maintain the set gap between your vehicle and the one detected in front. This braking capacity is limited to approximately 30% of the total manual braking capacity to ensure smooth and comfortable cruising. If the car needs to brake more heavily than this, and you do not intervene by braking manually, an alarm will sound and a warning symbol will be displayed in the cluster.

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



- A Set speed increase
- B Set speed decrease
- C ACC on/off
- D ACC gap increase
- E ACC gap decrease
- F ACC cancel/resume

## Switching the system on

Press switch **C**. The system is set to standby mode.

## Setting a speed

**Note:** The system must be in standby mode.

Press switch **A** or switch **B** to select your desired cruise speed. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

## Changing the set speed

**Note:** Vehicle speed may be increased and decreased at intervals of 5 km/h or 5 mph.

**Note:** If the system does not react to these changes the reason may be that the gap interval to the vehicle in front prevents an increase in speed.

Press switch **A** to increase or switch **B** to decrease the set speed until the desired set speed is shown in the information display. The vehicle speed will gradually change to the selected speed.

## Setting the vehicle gap

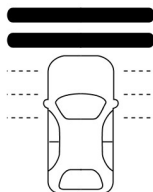
### CAUTION

⚠ Use the appropriate gap setting in accordance with local traffic regulations.

**Note:** The gap setting is time dependent and therefore the distance will automatically adjust with your speed. For example on a gap setting of four bars, the time gap is 1.8 seconds. This will mean that at a speed of 100 km/h (62 mph), the distance to the vehicle in front will be maintained at 50 meters (164 feet).

**Note:** If the accelerator is depressed for a short period, for example when overtaking, the system is temporarily deactivated and then reactivated when the accelerator pedal is released. A message is displayed in the information display.

**Note:** The gap setting will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.



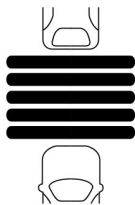
E82311

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

The distance between you and the vehicle detected in front is maintained by a variable setting. There are five steps which are represented by horizontal bars displayed in the information display. One bar indicates the smallest gap and five bars indicates the largest gap. These bars are shown empty when in standby mode and filled when in active mode.

If no vehicle is detected in front, then only your vehicle is displayed in the information display below the bars. The system will maintain the set speed when conditions permit. The set gap is maintained and displayed.

If a vehicle is detected by the sensor, the display will show another vehicle above the horizontal bars:



E82312

This is a follow mode, and the system will accelerate or decelerate as necessary to maintain the set gap.

Pull switch **E** to decrease the gap or switch **D** to increase the gap. The gap selected will be represented by the number of bars in the display.

**Note:** The recommended gap setting is four or five bars.

## Temporarily deactivating the system

**Note:** The system is canceled when the gear lever is moved to a neutral position or if the accelerator pedal or clutch is depressed for a long period of time.

Press the brake pedal or pull switch **F** to cancel the system. The system will return to standby mode allowing you full manual control of the vehicle. The set speed and gap setting are retained in the memory.

Pull switch **F** again to resume. The system will resume with the previously set speed and vehicle gap setting if conditions permit.

## Switching the system off

Press switch **C** to turn the system off.

**Note:** When deactivating the system by pressing switch **C**, the stored speed is not retained.

## Automatic deactivation

**Note:** If the engine speed drops too low, a message is displayed in the information display instructing you to change down a gear (manual transmission only). If you do not follow this recommendation then the system will go into automatic deactivation mode.

**Note:** The system will not operate if traction control has been switched off.

The system is dependent on various other safety systems, for example ABS and ESP. If any of these systems are malfunctioning or reacting to an emergency, the system is automatically deactivated.

In the event of automatic deactivation a signal will sound and the message is displayed in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 86). You must then intervene and adapt your driving and speed to vehicles in front.

An automatic deactivation can be due to the:

- vehicle speed falling below 30 km/h (20 mph)
- wheels losing traction

# Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

- brake temperature being too high, for example when driving on mountainous or hilly roads
- engine speed being too low
- radar sensor being covered
- parking brake being applied.

## FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

### WARNINGS



Never wait for a collision warning. When driving you are responsible for maintaining the correct distance and speed, even when the system is used.



The system will only react to vehicles in front traveling in the same direction and will not react to slow or stationary vehicles.



Never drive in a manner to provoke the system. The system is designed to assist in emergencies only.

### CAUTIONS



Warnings may be triggered late, be absent or triggered unnecessarily due to detection beam issues. See

**Principle of Operation** (page 155).



The system uses the same radar sensors as adaptive cruise control and therefore has the same limitations.

See **Principle of Operation** (page 155).

**Note:** *The brake support system only reduces the collision speed if you brake immediately once alerted.*

**Note:** *If the brake pedal is depressed sufficiently quickly then braking is implemented with full brake function, even if the force on the pedal is light.*

**Note:** *Brake support prepares the brake system for rapid braking and the brakes are applied gently, which may be noticed as a slight jerk.*

**Note:** *The collision alerts will only occur if the system is switched on, however the brake support is always on and cannot be turned off.*

**Note:** *The system may be used with or without the adaptive cruise control system being activated.*

The system assists you by warning of the risk of a collision with a vehicle in front.

The system alerts you by warning chimes and a visual warning in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

Brake support is activated to enable full braking effectiveness, and reduce the severity of a collision with the vehicle in front.

## Switching the system on and off

**Note:** *When the system is switched off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).*

**Note:** *The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.*

The system can be switched on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

## Adjusting the warning sensitivity

You may adjust the system warning sensitivity using the buttons on the steering wheel. See **General Information** (page 79). This controls how early the visual and audible warning is activated.

# Speed Limiter

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNING



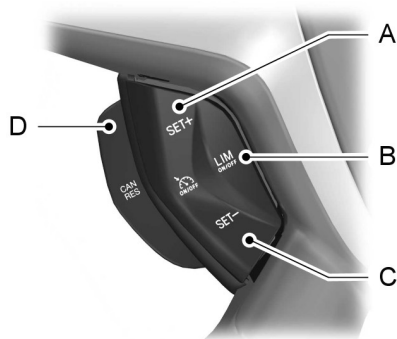
When you are going downhill, your speed may increase above the set speed. The system will not apply the brakes but a warning will be given.

The system allows you to set a speed, to which the vehicle then becomes limited. The set speed will become the effective maximum speed of the vehicle, but with the option to temporarily exceed this limit if required.

## USING THE SPEED LIMITER

**Note:** *The set speed limit can be intentionally exceeded for a short period if required, for example when overtaking.*

The system is operated by adjustment controls mounted on the steering wheel.



E133198

- A Set speed increase
- B Speed limiter on/off
- C Set speed decrease
- D Speed limiter cancel/resume

## Switching the system on and off

Press switch **B**. The information display will prompt for a speed to be set.

## Setting the speed limit

Use the cruise control switches to alter the maximum speed setting.

Press switch **A** or switch **C** to select your desired speed limit. The speed is displayed in the information display and stored as the set speed.

Pull switch **D** to cancel the limiter and place it in standby mode. The information display will confirm deactivation by showing the set speed crossed out.

Pull switch **D** again to resume the limiter. The information display will confirm the system is active by showing the set speed again.

## Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit

Depress the accelerator fully to temporarily deactivate the system. The system will reactivate once the vehicle speed drops below the set speed.

## System warnings

If the set limit is accidentally exceeded, for example driving downhill, the information display will show the set speed flashing together with an audible warning chime.

If the set limit is intentionally exceeded the information display will show the set speed crossed out.

# Driver Alert

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Take regular rest breaks as required and do not wait for the system to warn you if you feel tired.



Take rest breaks only where it is safe to do so.



Certain driving styles and behavior may result in the system issuing a warning even if you are not feeling tired.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and highways.

**Note:** The system calculates an alertness level at vehicle speeds above approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The system automatically monitors your driving behavior using various inputs including the front camera sensor.

If the system detects that you are becoming drowsy or there is a deterioration in your driving, the system will alert you.

## USING DRIVER ALERT

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** The system status will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

Activate the system using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

Once activated the system will calculate your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings, and other factors.

### System warnings

**Note:** The system will not issue warnings below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system is in two stages. At first the system issues a temporary warning that a rest should be taken. This message will only appear for a short time. If a rest is not then taken a further warning may be issued which will remain in the information display until canceled. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

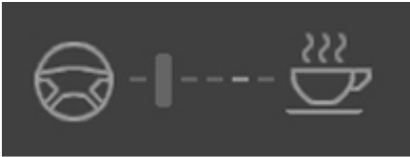
Press **OK** on the steering wheel control to remove the warning.

# Driver Alert

## System display

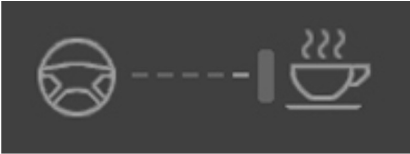
When active the system will run automatically in the background and only issue warnings if required. You can view the status at any time using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

The alertness level is shown by six steps as a colored bar.



E131358

Alertness level is fine, no rest required.



E131359

Alertness level is critical, indicating that a rest should be taken as soon as safely possible.

The status bar will travel from left to right as the calculated alertness level decreases. As the rest icon is approached the color turns from green to yellow and then finally red when a rest break must be taken.

- Green - No rest required.
- Yellow - First (temporary) warning.
- Red - Second warning.

**Note:** The alertness level will be shown in grey if the camera sensor cannot track the road lane markings or if the vehicle speed drops below approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

## Resetting the system





You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver's door.



# Lane Departure Warning

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.
-  At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.
-  If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.
-  Lane markings may not always be properly tracked by the sensor. Other structures or objects may sometimes be incorrectly detected as a lane marking, resulting in a false or missed warning.

### CAUTIONS

-  In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.
-  The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
-  The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.
-  The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.
-  Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.
-  If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and highways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and, when you are intentionally steering the vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate above vehicle speeds of approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If it detects that the vehicle is unintentionally drifting towards the lane boundaries then a visual warning will be displayed in the information display. There is also a warning given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

## USING LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** When the system is switched off, a warning indicator will remain illuminated in the information display. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 74).

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.



E132099

# Lane Departure Warning

Activate and deactivate the system using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button to turn the system off. Press the button twice to turn the system on.

## Setting the steering wheel vibration level

The system has three intensity levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

## Setting the system sensitivity

You can adjust how quickly the system warns you of a dangerous situation. The system has two sensitivity levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

## System warnings



E132851

A column of lane markings is displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green - The system is ready to warn you of any unintentional lane departure.
- Red - The vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. Take immediate safe action to reposition the vehicle.
- Grey - The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.

Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- The direction indicator for that side of the vehicle is on.
- During hard acceleration and braking, or if direct steering is applied.
- Vehicle speed is outside the operating limits
- If there is an ABS or Stability Control (ESP) intervention.
- Narrow lane width.

If the lane markings turn red or a vibration is felt through the steering wheel you must take immediate and safe action to align the vehicle and correct any unintended lane drift.

# Lane Keeping Aid

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.



Lane markings may not always be properly tracked by the sensor. Other structures or objects may sometimes be incorrectly detected as a lane marking, resulting in a false or missed warning in conjunction with a false or missed steering intervention.



Always have your hands on the steering wheel in case you need to overrule the system.

### CAUTIONS



In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all influence the sensor.



The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



The system may not operate in areas during roadworks construction.



The system may not operate on roads with sharp bends or narrow lanes.



Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.



If your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system is intended as a driver aid when driving on fast main roads and freeways.

**Note:** The system may not operate during hard braking or acceleration and when you are intentionally steering the vehicle.

**Note:** The system will operate with a minimum of one tracked lane marking.

**Note:** The system will only operate between vehicle speeds of approximately 65 km/h (40 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

**Note:** If the system does not detect an active steering input by the driver it will be temporarily deactivated until you resume control. The system alerts you with a warning chime and a message in the display.

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to alert you of unintentional lane drifting at high speeds.

The system will automatically detect and track the lane markings on the road. If it detects that the vehicle is unintentionally drifting towards the lane boundaries then a visual warning will be displayed in the information display. The system will also automatically apply a steering torque to correct the vehicle path. If the system is unable to correct the vehicle path a lane departure warning will be given. See **Using lane departure warning** (page 163).

## USING THE LANE KEEPING AID

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** The system is per default off.

**Note:** When the system has been switched on, lane departure warning is per default on.

# Lane Keeping Aid



E132099

Activate and deactivate the system using the button on the indicator stalk.

Press the button three times to switch the system on. Press the button again to turn the system off.

## System warnings



E132851

A column of lane markings is displayed either side of the vehicle graphic.

The lane markings are color coded as follows:

- Green - The system is ready to intervene if an unintentional lane departure may occur.
- Yellow - The system will automatically apply a steering torque to align the vehicle path and correct any unintended lane drift.

- Red - The vehicle is approaching or is too close to the detected lane boundary. A warning is given in the form of a vibration felt through the steering wheel. Take immediate safe action to reposition the vehicle.
- Grey - The relevant lane boundary will be suppressed.














Instances where a lane boundary may be suppressed:

- Lane markings on the road may not be detected by the sensor.
- The direction indicator for that side of the vehicle is on.
- During hard acceleration and braking, or if direct steering is applied.
- Vehicle speed is outside the operating limits
- If there is an ABS or Stability Control (ESP) intervention.
- Narrow lane width.



**Note:** *The system can be overridden at any time during its operation by turning the steering wheel.*

## PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

### WARNINGS

-  The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.
-  At all times you are responsible for controlling the vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.
-  Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.
-  If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.
-  To achieve full system performance, the brake system needs to be bedded in. See **Breaking-In** (page 184).
-  The system performance may vary depending on the vehicle and road conditions.
-  The system will not react to vehicles driving in a different direction.
-  The system will not react to bicycles, motorcycles, people or animals.
-  When the ignition is on the sensor will constantly transmit a laser beam.
-  The system will not operate during harsh acceleration and steering.
-  In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and ice can all influence the sensor.
-  Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.
-  If your vehicle is fitted with a windshield not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

### WARNINGS

-  If the engine stops after the system has been activated, the hazard warning flashers will be activated.
-  The system may not function when driving around sharp bends.

**Note:** *Keep the windscreen free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.*

**Note:** *Keep the hood free of ice and snow, otherwise the system may not function correctly.*

A sensor is mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors conditions to decide when to intervene.

The system is designed to help you reduce low speed collisions into the rear of another vehicle. It will also help you reduce the impact damage or potentially avoid the collision completely.

The system operates at speeds below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) by applying the brakes when the sensor detects that a collision is likely.

You must depress the brake pedal to obtain full braking force.

When the system is braking or has automatically applied the brakes, a message will be shown in the display.

For laser sensor information and data: See **Type approvals** (page 324).

# Active City Stop

## USING ACTIVE CITY STOP - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.6L/2.0L DURATEC-HE (MI4), 1.6L DIESEL/2.0L DIESEL

Activate and deactivate the system using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

### WARNING



Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** *The system automatically turns on every time you switch the ignition on.*

In certain situations it is advisable to disable the system, for example:

- Driving off road when objects may cover the windshield.
- Driving through a car wash facility.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

## USING ACTIVE CITY STOP - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### WARNINGS



Never look directly into the sensor with any type of object, there is a risk of eye injury.



If you switch stability control off, active city stop will also be switched off. A message will be shown in the display.

### Switching the system on and off

**Note:** *The system is per default on.*

**Note:** *In certain situations, it may be advisable to disable the system, for example driving off road when objects may cover the windshield.*

## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Principle of Operation

#### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention.



At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening if required.



If the sensor becomes blocked the system may not function.

**Note:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

**Note:** Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

**Note:** If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system may not function correctly.

**Note:** Always fit Ford original parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs may reduce system performance.

**Note:** Keep the windshield free from obstructions such as bird droppings, insects and snow or ice.

**Note:** The system may not detect all traffic signs and may read signs incorrectly.

**Note:** The system is designed to automatically detect traffic signs meeting the Vienna convention.

**Note:** Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

There is a sensor mounted behind the interior rear view mirror. It continuously monitors road signs to inform you of the current speed limit and overtaking regulations.

The system automatically detects recognisable traffic signs, such as:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.

When the system recognises a traffic sign, it will be shown in the display.

### Using the System

#### Switching the System On and Off

**Note:** The system status and settings will remain unchanged during ignition cycles.

You can switch the system on and off using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

#### Setting the System Speed Warning

The system has a number of speed warning levels which can be set using the information display. See **General Information** (page 79).

### System Display



E132994

The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the information display.

# Driving Aids

---

The system display is in four stages as follows:

1. All new recognizable traffic signs will appear brighter than the other traffic signs in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they will be shown normally.
3. After a predetermined distance they will be shown greyed out.
4. After another predetermined distance they will be deleted.






If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, this sign is indicated as a box below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a reduced speed limit in wet road conditions sign.

If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.




# Load Carrying

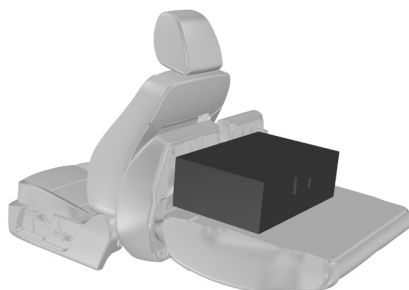
## GENERAL INFORMATION

### WARNINGS

-  Use load securing straps to an approved standard, e.g. DIN.
-  Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.
-  Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.
-  Do not drive with the tailgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter the vehicle.
-  Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle identification** (page 236).
-  Heavy loads, when placed in the passenger compartment, should be on folded rear seats as shown. See **Rear Seats** (page 113).

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.
-  Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
-  Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.



E97377

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS




E132901

Lift the flap to access the anchor point.

## CARGO NETS

### Luggage retention net

#### WARNING

-  On Wagon, luggage retention net anchor points are not fitted behind the first row seats, but are fitted behind the second row seats.

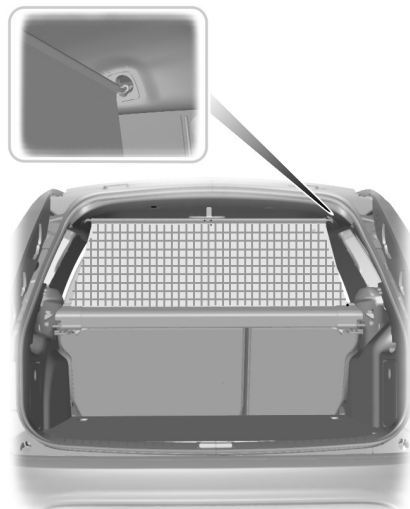
To install the cargo retention net cassette:

# Load Carrying

Remove the luggage cover.

Push the sliders on the cassette towards each other and insert the telescopic bar into the holes on the sidewall behind the rear seatbacks.

Ensure that the end caps with the anti-rotation pin are correctly fitted in the side trim.



E78834

Pull up the net and insert the ends of the bar into the retainers on the roof.

Ensure that the bar is pushed forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.

## WARNING

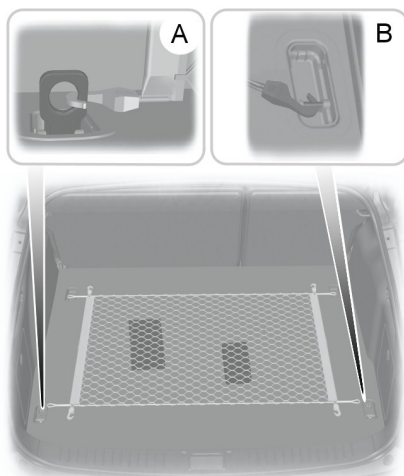


After installing the cassette, press the front edge of the luggage cover back down into its original position (forwards) to prevent vision out of the rear screen being obscured.

Reinstall the luggage cover.

Remove in the reverse order.

## Cargo net



E78835

- A With retaining rings
- B Without retaining rings

The cargo net can be used to prevent objects sliding around.

Attach the hooks at each corner of the net to the four retaining points on the load floor.

## LUGGAGE COVERS

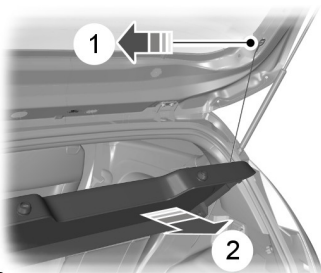
### WARNING



Do not place objects on the luggage cover.

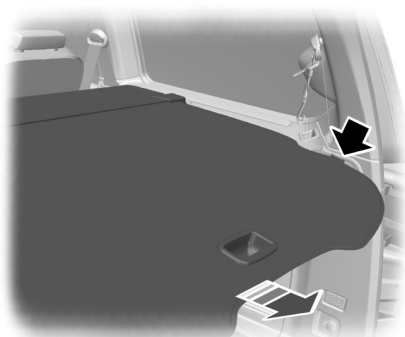
# Load Carrying

## 3-door and 5-door



E72512

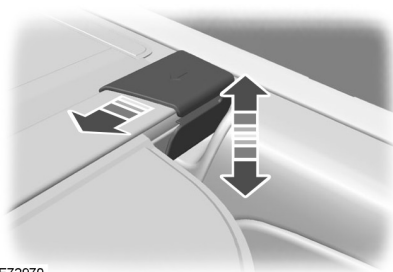
## Wagon



E72969

Pull out the cover and secure it in the retaining points.

Release it from the retaining points and let it roll back into the case. Clip the retaining hook onto the case.







E72970

## ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

### Roof rack

#### WARNINGS

-  If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.
-  On vehicles with a 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (MI4) engine, do not switch stability control off or select sport mode if you use a roof rack.
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.
-  Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load of 75 kilograms (165 pounds) (including the roof rack).

Check the security of the roof rack and tighten its fittings as follows:

- Before starting.
- After driving 50 kilometers (30 miles).
- At 1000 kilometer (600 mile) intervals.

To reduce fuel consumption, cross rails should be removed when not in use.

# Load Carrying

## Installing the crossbars

### WARNINGS



Distribute the load evenly over the loading area and keep the center of gravity as low as possible. Secure the load well to prevent it from slipping. Never place any loads directly onto the roof surface.

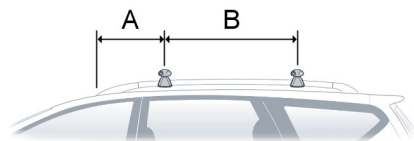


Remove the crossbars before entering an automatic car wash.

**Note:** The side mounting tracks are designed such that crossbars (for bicycle carriers, ski carriers etc.) from the Ford accessories range can be fitted.

**Note:** Before installing the crossbars, clean the side mounting tracks with water and a sponge.

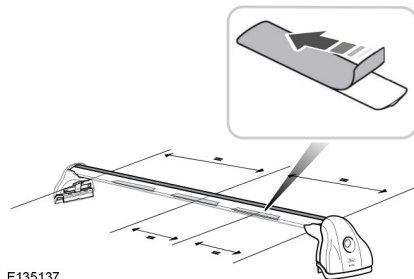
**Note:** Position the crossbars as shown.



E135136

A 515 mm (20 inches)

B 750 mm (30 inches)

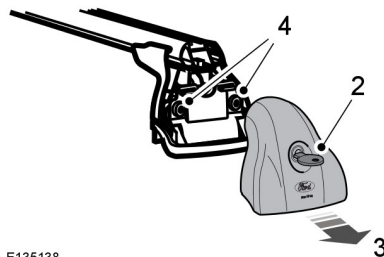


E135137

**Note:** Adhesive pads are supplied to help reduce the buffeting noise.

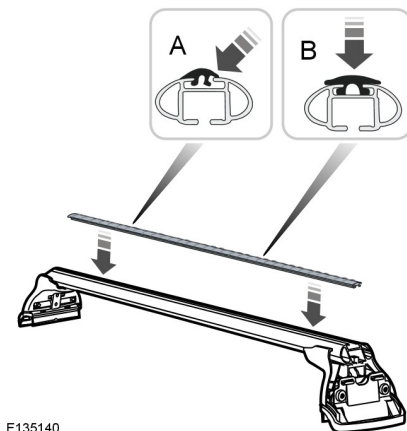
**Note:** Make sure the surface of the crossbars is clean before attaching the adhesive pads.

1. Remove the backing and attach the adhesive pads to the crossbars in the positions shown.



E135138

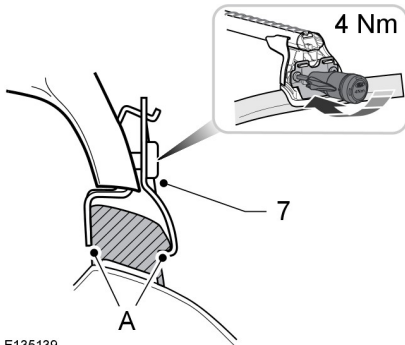
2. Insert the key. Turn the key counterclockwise.
3. Remove the cover.
4. Loosen the screws.



E135140

5. Install rubber strips in the positions shown.

# Load Carrying

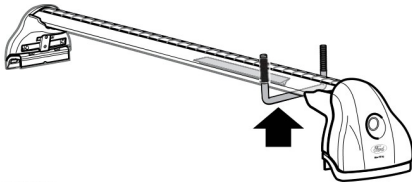


E135139

**Note:** Make sure there is no gap between crossbar and rail (**A**).

6. Install the crossbars.
7. Tighten the screws until you hear a distinct click.
8. Install the cover. Turn the key clockwise to lock.
9. Remove the key.

## Installing a roof box



E135141

Make sure the adhesive pads are not in contact with the installation bolt.

## DOG GUARD

### CAUTION



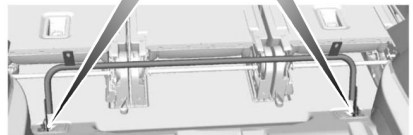
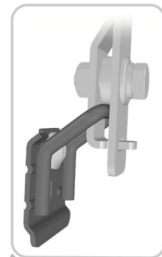
Keep a distance of at least one centimeter between the dog guard and the seats in front of it.

## Installing behind the front seats



E86848

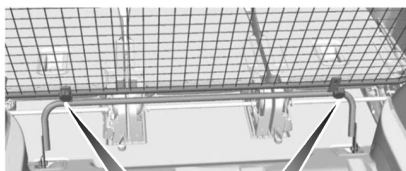
1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.



E87782

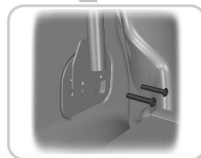
2. Attach the dog guard to the lower anchor points. Do not tighten the screws.

## Load Carrying



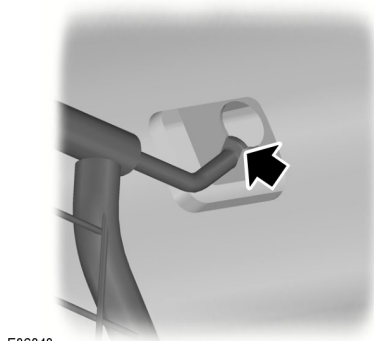
E87783

1. Push the ends of the bar on the grille towards each other and insert them into the retainers on the roof. Push the bar forwards into the narrow section of the retainers.



E104424

2. Remove two screws from both the luggage anchor points. See **Luggage Anchor Points** (page 171).
  3. Attach the lower bar to the grille with the handwheels. Do not tighten the handwheels.
  4. Attach the dog guard lower bar to the luggage anchor points, secure with the new supplied screws.
  5. Tighten the handwheels.
- Remove in the reverse order.



E86848

## TOWING A TRAILER - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.6L/2.0L DURATEC-HE (M14), 1.6L DIESEL/2.0L DIESEL

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h). This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



The rear tire pressures must be increased by 3 psi (0.2 bar) above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 219).



Do not exceed the maximum gross train weight stated on your vehicle identification plate. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 236).



Do not exceed the maximum permissible trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball) as stated in the vehicle specification chart. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death. See **Vehicle identification** (page 236).



The anti-lock braking system does not control the overrun brake on the trailer. This could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

### When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
  - Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
  - Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, the load in your trailer should be placed toward the nose, within the maximum nose load, as this gives the best stability. See **Vehicle identification** (page 236).
  - The trailer nose weight (vertical weight on the tow ball), is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
  - The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight. See **Vehicle identification** (page 236).
  - Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.
  - Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.
- Note:** *The maximum permissible trailer nose weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer nose weight may be lower.*
- The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.
- Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.
- The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 3281 feet (1000 meters) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 3281 feet (1000 metres), the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight must be reduced by 10% for every extra 3281 feet (1000 metres).

# Towing

**Note:** Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have tow bars fitted. See an authorized dealer for further information.

## Trailer Lighting

The electrical system on your vehicle is not suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

## TOWING A TRAILER - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### WARNING



Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing.

## TOW BALL

### WARNINGS



When not in use, always transport the tow ball arm securely fastened in the luggage compartment.



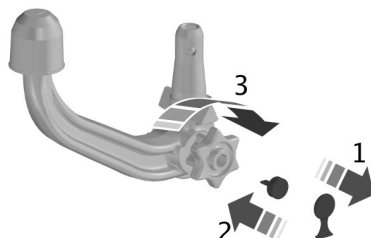
Take special care when fitting the tow ball arm as the safety of the vehicle and the trailer depends on this.



Do not use any tools for mounting or dismounting the tow ball arm. Do not modify the trailer coupling. Do not disassemble or repair the tow ball arm.

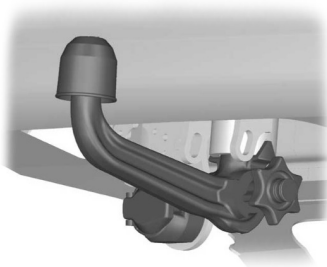
A 13-pin trailer socket and the tow ball arm seat are provided underneath the rear bumper. Turn the trailer socket down through 90 degrees until it engages in the end position.

## Unlocking the tow ball arm mechanism



E71329

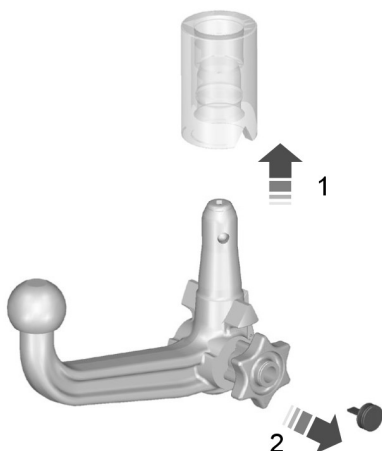
1. Remove the protecting cap (1). Insert the key and turn it clockwise to unlock (2).
2. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out and turn it clockwise until it clicks (3).
3. The red mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.
4. Release the handwheel. The tow ball arm is unlocked.



E71328

# Towing

## Inserting the tow ball arm



E71330

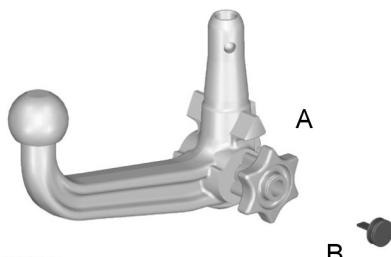
### WARNING



The tow ball arm may only be inserted when completely unlocked.

1. Pull out the plug.
2. Insert the tow ball arm vertically and press it upwards until it engages (1). Do not hold your hand near the handwheel.
3. The green mark on the handwheel must align with the green mark on the tow ball.
4. To lock, turn the key counterclockwise and remove the key (2).
5. Pull the protecting cap from the key bow and press it onto the lock.

## Driving with a trailer



E71331

### WARNING



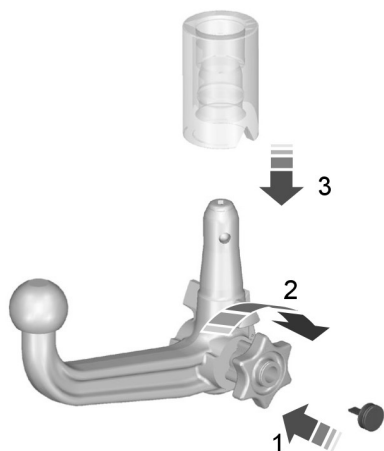
If any of the below conditions cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- the green marks are aligned
- the handwheel (A) is correctly fitted to the tow ball arm
- you have removed the key (B)
- the tow ball arm is securely positioned. It must not move when jerked.

# Towing

## Removing the tow ball arm

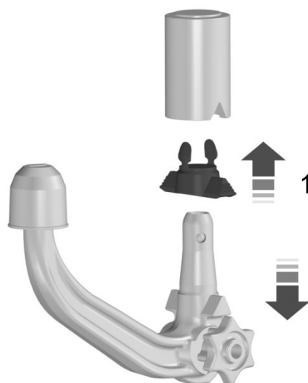


E71332

1. Unhitch the trailer.
2. Remove the protecting cap. Press the cap into the key bow. Insert the key and unlock (1).
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Pull the handwheel out, turn it clockwise against the stop (2) and remove the tow ball arm (3).
4. Release the handwheel.

When unlocked in this way, the tow ball arm can be reinserted at any time.

## Driving without a trailer



E94771

1. Remove the tow ball arm.
2. Insert the plug into its seat (1).

### WARNING



Never unlock the tow ball arm with the trailer attached.

## Maintenance

### WARNING



Remove the tow ball arm and protect the seat with the plug before steam cleaning your vehicle.

Keep the system clean. Periodically lubricate bearings, sliding surfaces, and locking balls with resin-free grease or oil and the lock with graphite.

In case of loss, replacement keys are available from the manufacturer by stating the number on the lock cylinder.

# Towing

## RETRACTABLE TOW BALL

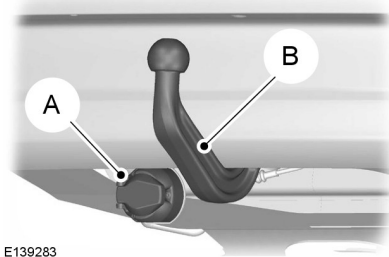
### WARNINGS



You will hear a warning tone when the tow ball arm is not in one of the locked positions. The warning tone will switch off after 30 seconds. If you do not hear the tone when moving the tow ball arm or at system activation, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.



Only move the tow ball arm with your hand. Never use your foot or auxiliary tools as damage to the mechanism may result.



E139283

A 13-pin trailer socket A is provided underneath the rear bumper next to the tow ball arm B.

## Releasing the tow ball arm

### WARNING



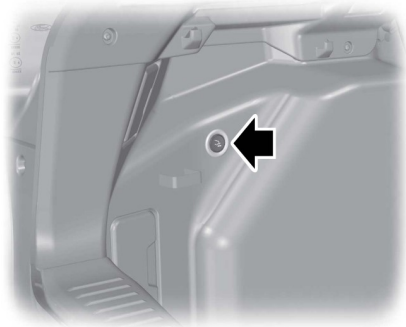
Do not touch the tow ball arm during the release process.

**Note:** If the release process is interrupted, for example an obstacle in the way or loss of power supply, the system will need to be reset. To reset the system, repeat the release process.

**Note:** The lamp in the switch illuminates when the system is activated.

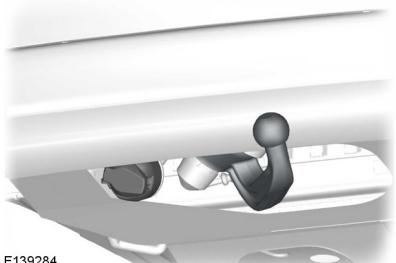
The following conditions must be met before releasing the tow ball arm:

- The luggage compartment lid must be open.
- The ignition must be switched off.
- No plug must be attached to the 13-pin trailer socket.
- The battery voltage must be greater than 11 volts.



E132909

1. Press the button until it illuminates to activate the system.
2. Press the button again within four seconds to release the tow ball arm.



E139284

The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the lowered position.

If the tow ball arm fails to release, press the button again for 15 seconds.

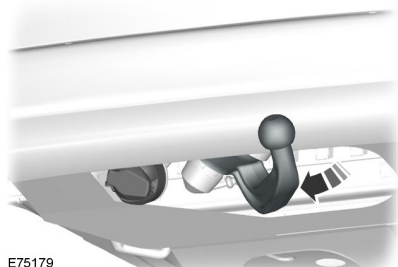
# Towing

## WARNING



If it still fails to release, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

## Swiveling the tow ball arm out



E75179

Move the tow ball arm to the operating position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the operating position. The locking process is clearly audible and the warning tone will stop.

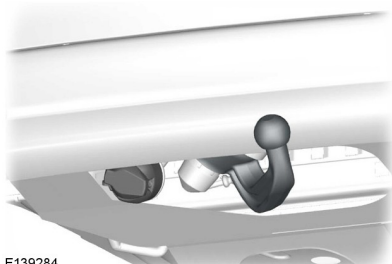
## Swiveling the tow ball arm in

### WARNING



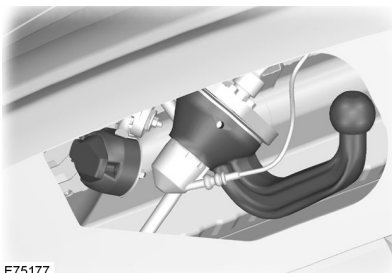
Before swiveling the tow ball arm in, always unhitch the trailer or dismantle load carriers and their attachments. Dismantle attachments for tracking stabilization. Remove the plug for the trailer power supply and the adapter from the socket. Failure to do so may result in damage to the bumper.

1. Release the tow ball arm. See releasing the tow ball arm.



E139284

2. The tow ball arm automatically swivels into the lowered position.



E75177

3. Move the tow ball arm to the stop in the stowed position. The tow ball arm automatically locks in the stowed position. The locking process is clearly audible and the warning tone will stop.

## Fault conditions

If the tow ball arm release button is illuminated or you hear a warning tone when the ignition switch is in position II, repeat the release process.

If you pull on the tow ball arm during the release process, the system will stop moving to prevent an overload condition. To reset the system, press the release button for 15 seconds.

## Driving with a trailer

### WARNINGS



In the event of a vehicle breakdown, disconnect the trailer before towing the vehicle.



If any of the conditions below cannot be met, do not use the tow bar and have it checked by a properly trained technician.

---

Before starting your journey, make sure that the tow ball arm is properly locked. Check that:

- there is no warning tone when the locking procedure has been completed
- the tow ball arm is locked. It must not move when jerked.

## Maintenance

### WARNINGS



The towing hitch and control unit are maintenance-free. Do not grease or oil them.



Only the manufacturer should carry out repairs or dismantle the towing hitch.



If you use a high pressure spray to wash your vehicle, do not direct the spray onto the swivel joint of the tow ball arm.

---

# Driving Hints

## BREAKING-IN

### Tires

#### WARNING



New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 kilometers (300 miles). During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

### Brakes and clutch

#### WARNING



Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 150 kilometers (100 miles) in town and for the first 1500 kilometers (1000 miles) on freeways.

### Engine

#### CAUTION



Avoid driving too fast during the first 1500 kilometers (1000 miles). Vary your speed frequently and change up through the gears early. Do not labor the engine.

## COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -30°C (-22°F).

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

### Driving through water

#### CAUTIONS



Drive through water in an emergency only, and not as part of normal driving.



Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

In an emergency, the vehicle can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 200 millimeters (8 inches) and at a maximum speed of 10 km/h (6 mph). Extra caution should be exercised when driving through flowing water.

When driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the vehicle. After driving through water, and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the vehicle's lights are fully operational.
- Check the power assistance of the steering system.

## FLOOR MATS



E142666

#### WARNINGS



Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the foot well of your vehicle, leaving the pedal area unobstructed, and which can be firmly secured to retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

## WARNINGS



Incorrectly fitted floor mats can cause the accelerator pedal to become stuck in the open position. This can cause loss of vehicle control.



Always correctly install the floor mats to the retention posts so that they cannot slip out of position or obstruct pedal operation.



Do not place unsecured floor mats or any other covering in the foot well.



Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This will reduce the pedal clearance and interfere with the pedal operation.



Do not allow objects to fall or become trapped under the pedals of your vehicle. This can cause loss of vehicle control.



Carry out regular inspections to make sure the floor mats are secure.

---

To install the floor mats, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position.

Remove in reverse order.

# Roadside Emergencies

---

## FIRST AID KIT

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

## FUEL SHUTOFF

### WARNING



Failure to inspect and if necessary repair fuel leaks after a crash may increase the risk of fire and serious injury. We recommend that the fuel system be inspected by an authorized dealer after any crash.

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, your vehicle is fitted with a fuel pump shut-off feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shut-off.

Should the engine turn off after a crash, you may restart the engine by carrying out the following.

## Ignition Switch

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Switch the ignition to position **III**.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Switch the ignition on again to re-enable the fuel pump.

**Note:** Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. If your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.

## Keyless Starting (If Equipped)

1. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
2. Press the brake pedal, and then press and release the button once.
3. Without applying the brake pedal, press and release the button once.
4. Press the brake pedal, and then press and hold the button until the engine starts.

**Note:** Various system checks are automatically carried out before the vehicle will restart. If your vehicle fails to restart after the third attempt, the system has detected a fault that requires service. We recommend you contact an authorized dealer.

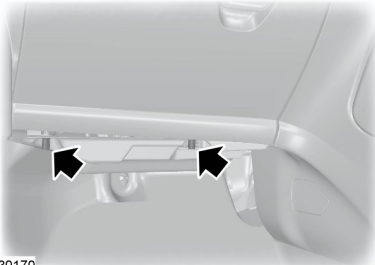
# Fuses

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

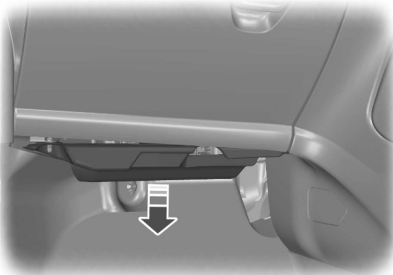
### Engine compartment fuse box

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 198).

### Passenger compartment fuse box



E130170



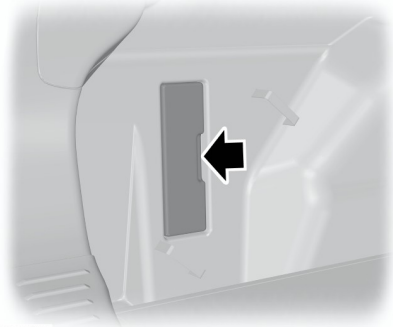
E130171

1. Pinch the retaining clips to release the cover.
2. Lower the fuse box cover and pull it towards you.

Install in the reverse order.

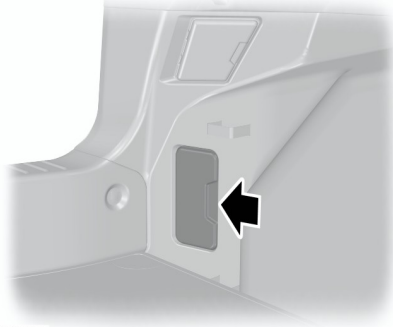
### Load compartment fuse box

#### 4-door



E135336

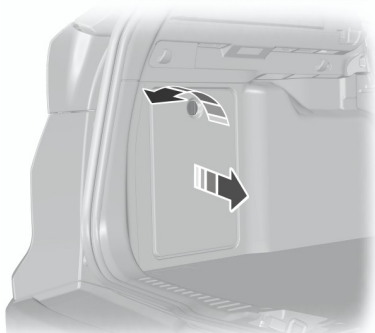
#### 5-door



E135337

# Fuses

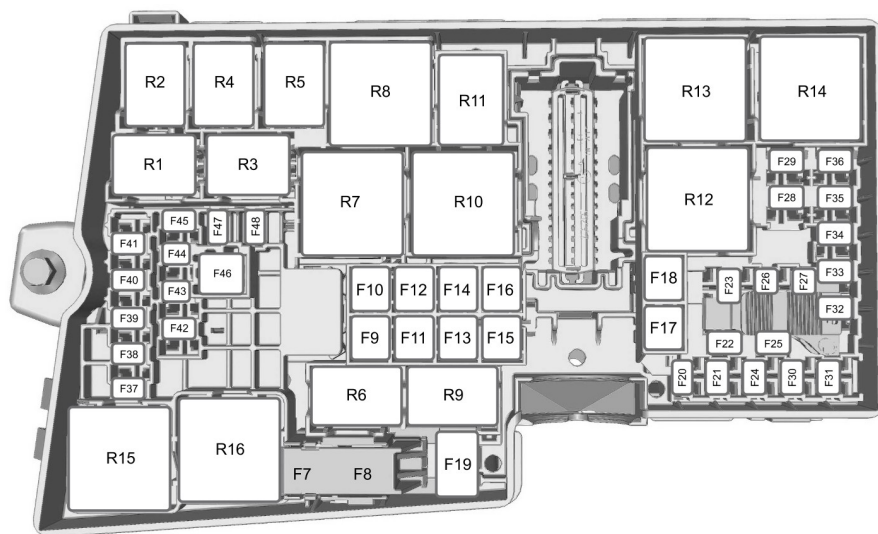
## Wagon



E135338

## FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

### Engine compartment fuse box



E129925

## Fuses

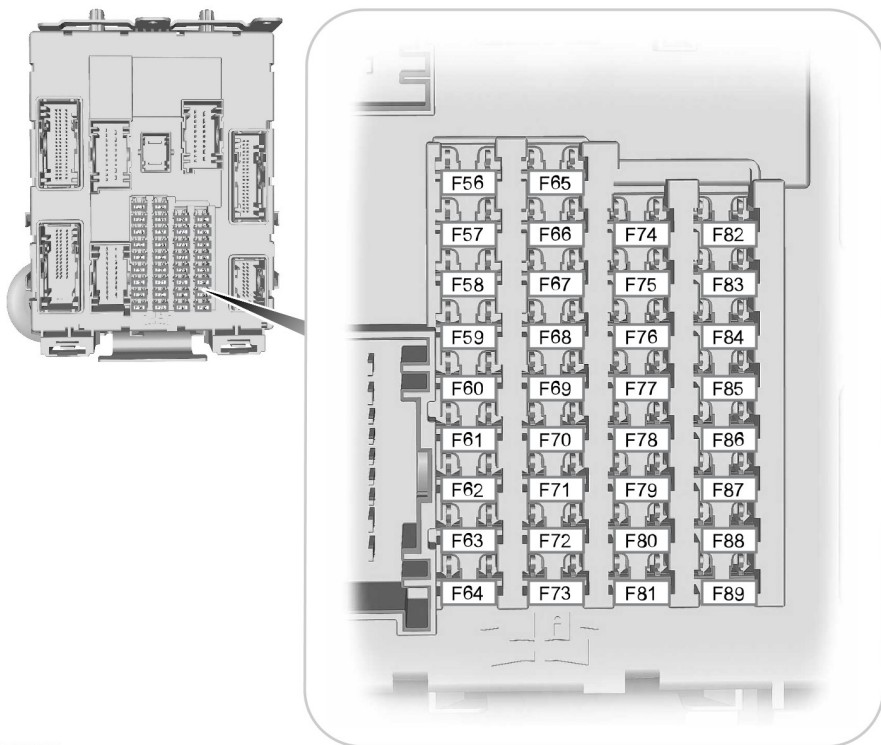
Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
7	40	Anti-lock Braking System pump, electronic stability program pump
8	30	Electronic stability program valve
9	30	Heated rear window
10	40	Heater blower
11	30	Start-stop module
12	30	Engine management systems, exhaust gas recirculation relay
13	30	Starter relay
14	40	Heated windshield (right-hand side)
15	25	Transmission control module, intercooler fan - 1.0L EcoBoost
16	40	Heated windshield (left-hand side)
17	20	Fuel operated heater
18	20	Windshield wipers
19	5	Anti-lock Braking System, electronic stability program module
20	15	Horn
21	5	Brake lamp switch
22	15	Battery monitoring system
23	5	Relay coils, lighting control switch module
24	20	Rear power outlet
25	10	Power exterior mirrors
26	15	Transmission control module
27	15	Air conditioning clutch
28	5	Adaptive cruise control
29	20	Headlamp washer

# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
30	5	Powertrain control module
31	-	Not used
32	10	Exhaust gas recirculation valve, swirl control valves, heated exhaust gas oxygen sensor (engine management), electronic fan control module relay (coil), run on water pump module - 1.0L EcoBoost
33	10	Engine control valves, canister purge valve, turbo control valve, water in fuel sensor, ignition coils - 1.0L EcoBoost
34	10	Injectors, vaporizer relay, canister purge valve
35	5	Active grille shutter (gasoline engine), Run on water pump relay, Intercooler fan relay
35	15	Active grille shutter and filter heater (diesel engine)
36	10	Powertrain control module
37	-	Not used
38	15	Powertrain control module, transmission control module
39	5	Headlamp control module (halogen leveling)
40	5	Electric power assisted steering
41	20	Body control module
42	15	Rear window wiper
43	15	Headlamp control module (high intensity discharge leveling), adaptive front lighting unit
44	5	Adaptive cruise control
45	10	Heated washer jets
46	25	Power windows (front)
47	7.5	Heated exterior mirrors
48	15	Vaporizer

# Fuses

## Passenger compartment fuse box



E129926

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
56	20	Fuel pump supply
57	-	Not used
58	-	Not used
59	5	Passive anti-theft system supply
60	10	Interior lamps, driver's door switch pack, glove box, ambient lighting, power moonroof

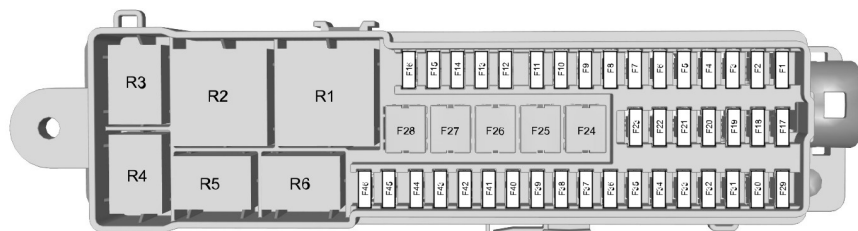
# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
61	20	Cigar lighter, rear power outlet
62	5	Rain sensor module, humidity sensor, auto-dimming mirror
63	10	Adaptive cruise control
64	-	Not used
65	10	Luggage compartment lid release
66	20	Driver's door lock, double locking
67	7.5	Information and entertainment display, GPS, bluetooth phone voice control connectivity
68	15	Electrical steering column lock
69	5	Instrument cluster
70	20	Central locking
71	10	Air conditioning
72	7.5	Steering wheel control module
73	7.5	Battery back-up sounder (alarm system), onboard diagnostics system
74	15	Main beam
75	15	Front fog lamps
76	10	Reversing lamp
77	20	Washer pump
78	5	Ignition switch or start button
79	15	Audio unit, hazard and door lock buttons
80	20	Power moonroof
81	5	Interior motion sensor, radio frequency receiver
82	20	Washer pump ground
83	20	Central locking ground
84	20	Driver's door unlock and double locking ground

## Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
85	7.5	Climate control heater, passenger airbag deactivation switch, heated seats switch, auxiliary heater, manual air conditioning heater module
86	10	Restraint system, passenger airbag deactivation system
87	-	Not used
88	-	Not used
89	-	Not used

### Load compartment fuse box



E129927

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
1	-	Not used
2	10	Keyless vehicle module
3	5	Keyless vehicle door handles
4	25	Door module (left-hand front) (power windows, central locking, electric folding mirrors, heated exterior mirrors)
5	25	Door module (right-hand front) (power windows, central locking, electric folding mirrors, heated exterior mirrors)
6	25	Door module (left-hand rear) (power windows)

# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
7	25	Door module (right-hand rear) (power windows)
8	10	Alarm system
9	25	Power driver's seat
10	-	Not used
11	25	Power front passenger's seat - 2.0L EcoBoost - MI4
12	10	Air conditioning module (with start-stop module)
13	5	Instrument cluster (with start-stop module)
14	7.5	Information and entertainment display, GPS module (with start-stop module)
15	15	Audio unit, audio unit control panel (with start-stop module)
16	-	Not used
17	-	Not used
18	-	Not used
19	-	Not used
20	-	Not used
21	-	Not used
22	-	Not used
23	-	Not used
24	-	Not used
25	-	Not used
26	40	Trailer module
27	-	Not used
28	-	Not used
29	5	Blind spot monitor, lane keeping aid, active city stop, rear view camera (without start-stop module)
30	5	Parking aid module

# Fuses

Fuse	Ampere rating	Circuits protected
31	-	Not used
32	-	Not used
33	-	Not used
34	15	Heated driver's seat
35	15	Heated front passenger's seat
36	-	Not used
37	5	Power moonroof
38	-	Not used
39	-	Not used
40	-	Not used
41	5	Retractable tow ball
42	-	Not used
43	-	Not used
44	-	Not used
45	-	Not used
46	10	Blind spot monitor, lane keeping aid, rear view camera (with start-stop module)

## CHANGING A FUSE

### WARNINGS



Do not modify the electrical system of your vehicle in any way. Have repairs to the electrical system and the replacement of relays and high current fuses carried out by a properly trained technician.



Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off before touching or attempting to change a fuse.

### CAUTION



Fit a replacement fuse with the same rating as the one you have removed.

**Note:** You can identify a blown fuse by a break in the filament.

**Note:** All fuses, except high current fuses, are a push fit.

**Note:** A fuse puller is located in the engine compartment fuse box.

# Vehicle recovery

## TOWING POINTS

### Towing eye location

The screw-in towing eye is located in the spare wheel well.

The towing eye must **always** be carried in the vehicle.

### Installing the towing eye

#### CAUTION

⚠ The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it **counterclockwise** to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

**Note:** On vehicles with a tow bar, the towing eye cannot be installed at the rear of the vehicle. Use the tow bar to tow a vehicle.

### Front towing eye



E78367

### Rear towing eye



E78368

Insert a suitable object into the hole on the underside of the cover and prise off the cover.

Install the towing eye.

## TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

### All vehicles

#### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. The steering lock will engage and the direction indicators and brake lamps will not work if you do not.



The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering.

# Vehicle recovery

---

## CAUTIONS

- ⚠ Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.
  - ⚠ Select neutral when your vehicle is being towed.
  - ⚠ In the event of a breakdown or mechanical failure **do not** use individual axle carriers. Your vehicle must be recovered with either **ALL** wheels on the ground or transported with **ALL** wheels lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.
- 

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is towing.

## Vehicles with automatic transmission

### CAUTIONS

- ⚠ If a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph) and a distance of 20 kilometers (12 miles) is to be exceeded **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground.
  - ⚠ It is recommended not to tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 20 km/h (12 mph) or further than 20 kilometers (12 miles).
  - ⚠ Do not tow your vehicle backwards.
  - ⚠ In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission **do not** use individual axle carriers. **ALL** wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.
  - ⚠ Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C (32°F).
-

# Maintenance

## GENERAL INFORMATION

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of Ford Authorized Repairers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

In addition to regular servicing, we recommend that you carry out the following additional checks.

### WARNINGS



Switch the ignition off before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan. Under certain conditions, the fan may continue to run for several minutes after you have switched the engine off.

### CAUTION



When carrying out maintenance checks, make sure that filler caps are fitted securely.

## Daily checks

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

## Check when refueling

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
- Tire pressures (when cold). See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 219).

## Monthly checks

- Engine coolant level (engine cold). See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

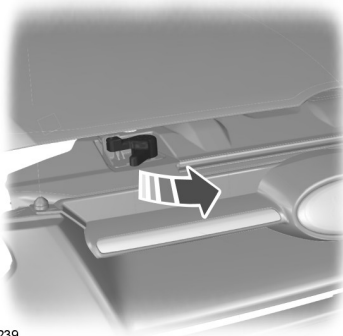
### Opening the hood



E73698

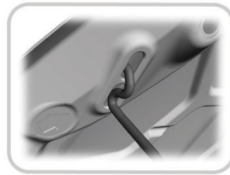
# Maintenance

---



E133239

Move the yellow catch to the right.



E87786

Open the hood and support it with the strut.



## Closing the hood

### WARNING

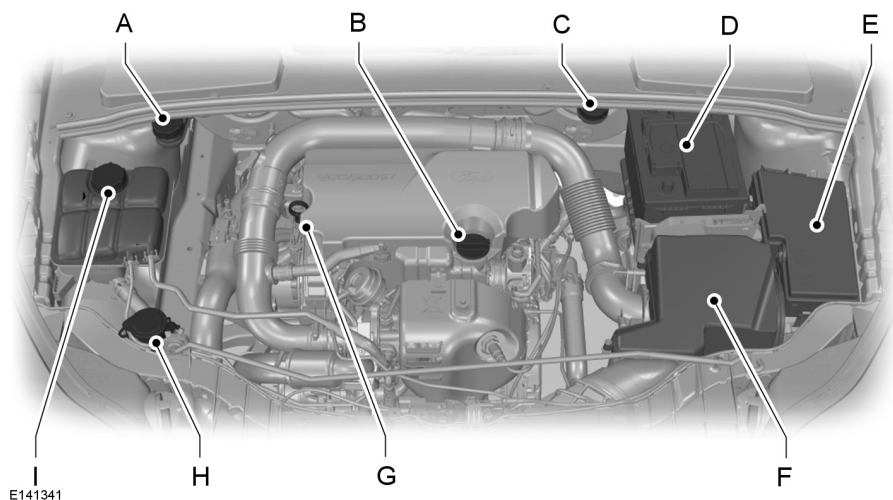


Make sure that the hood is closed properly.

Lower the hood and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20 – 30 centimeters (8 - 11 inches).

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

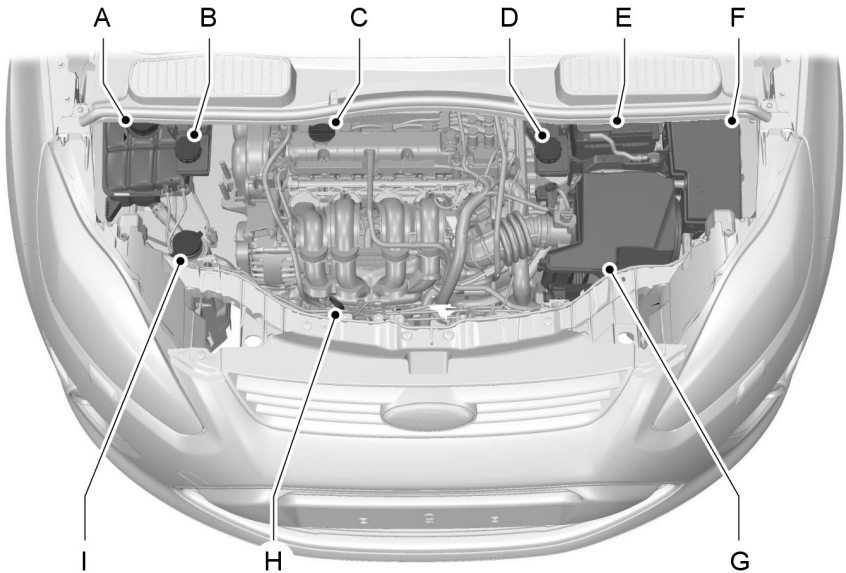


- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- B Engine oil filler cap\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 187).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Engine oil dipstick\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
- I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

\*The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DURATEC-16V (SIGMA)



E130030

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 187).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

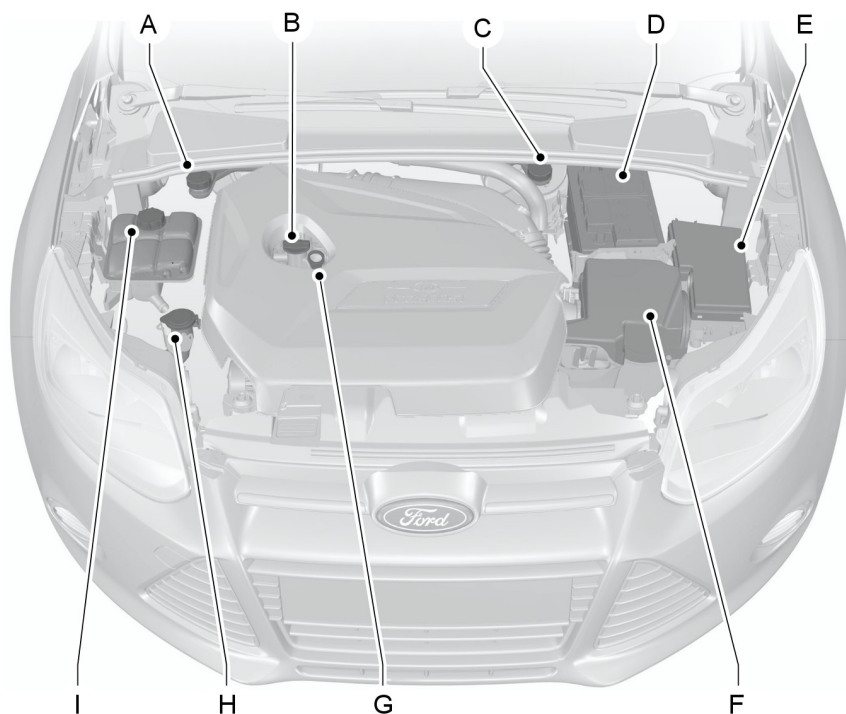
# Maintenance

H Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).

I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L ECOBOOST™



E132729

A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).

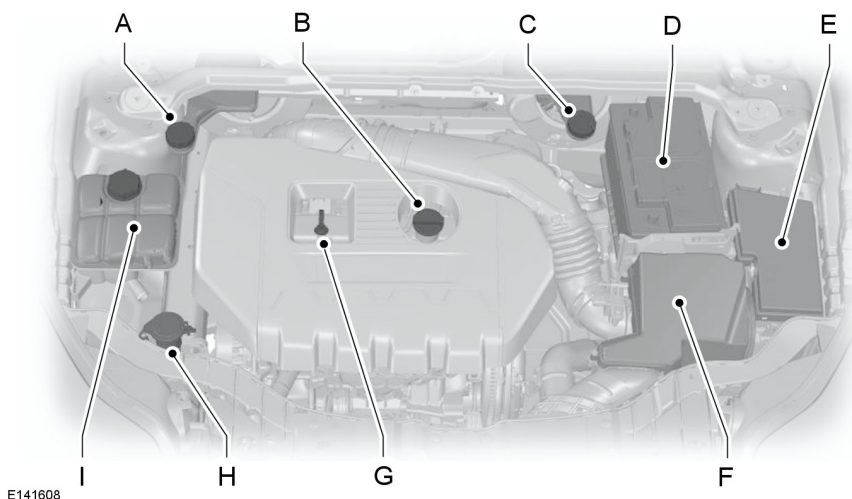
B Engine oil filler cap\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).

# Maintenance

- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 187).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Engine oil dipstick\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
- I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

\*The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



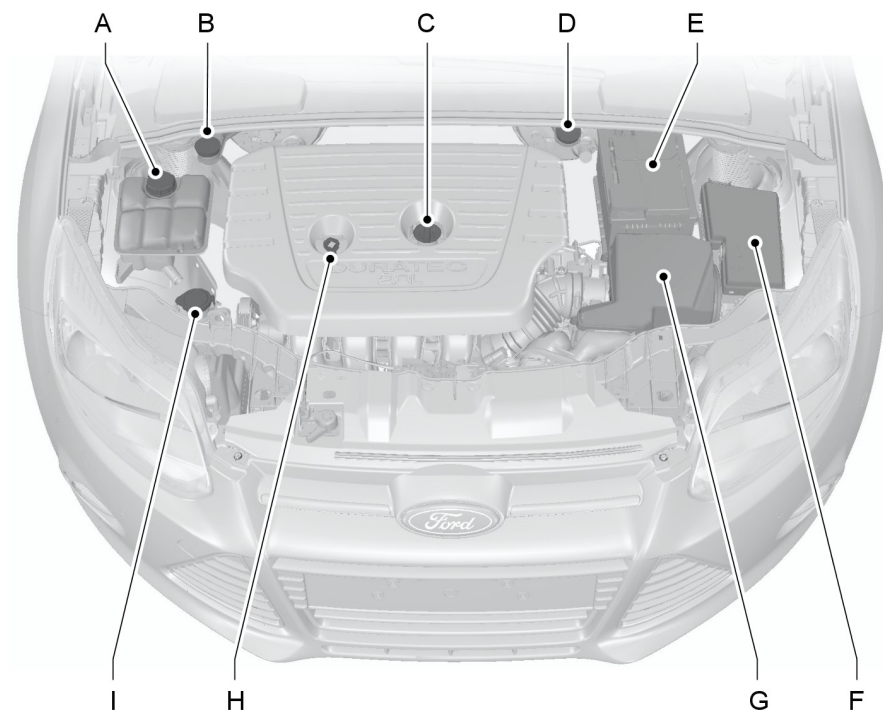
- A Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- B Engine oil filler cap\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive). See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).

# Maintenance

- D Battery. See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 188).
- F Air cleaner. No maintenance necessary.
- G Engine oil dipstick\*. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- H Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).
- I Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).

\*The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DURATEC-HE (M14)



E139960

# Maintenance

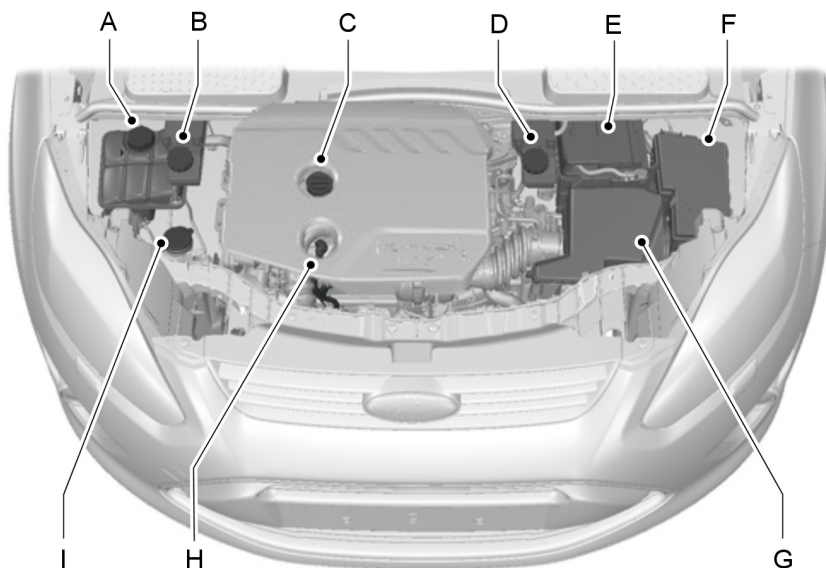
---

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 187).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- H Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

# Maintenance

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.6L DIESEL

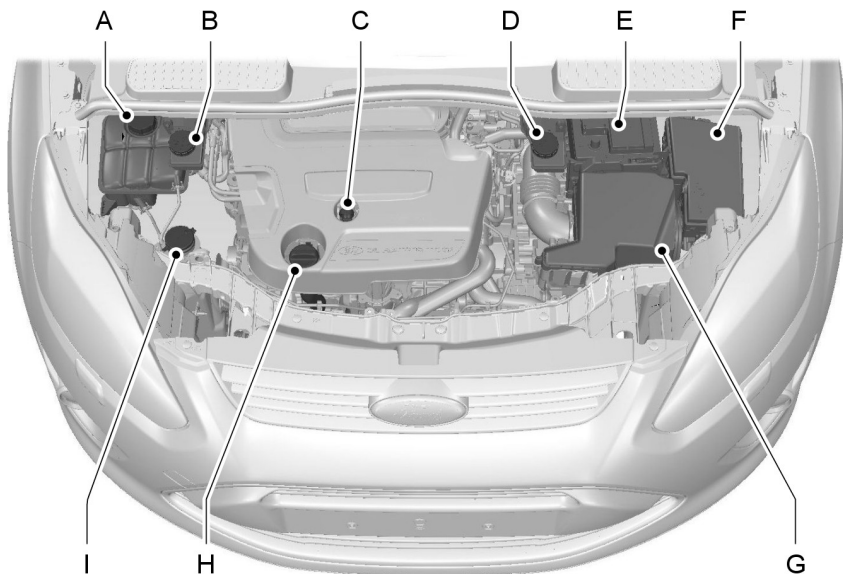


E130031

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- C Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 187).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.
- H Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

## UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.0L DIESEL



E130032

- A Engine coolant reservoir\*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 210).
- B Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (right-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- C Engine oil dipstick\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).
- D Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)\*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 210).
- E Battery: See **Vehicle battery** (page 217).
- F Engine compartment fuse box: See **Fuses** (page 187).
- G Air cleaner: No maintenance necessary.

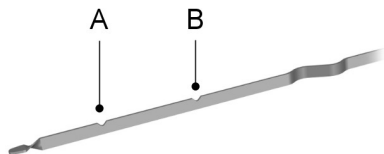
# Maintenance

H Engine oil filler cap\*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 209).

I Windshield washer fluid reservoir\*: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 211).

\*For easy identification, filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are marked in color.

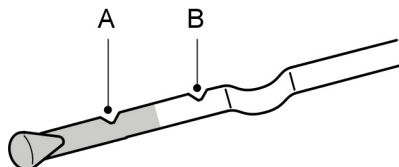
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™



E141337

A MIN  
B MAX

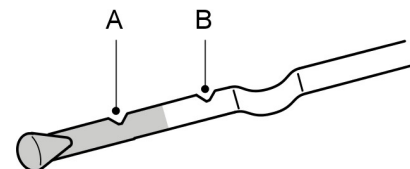
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L ECOBOOST™



E95540

A Minimum  
B Maximum

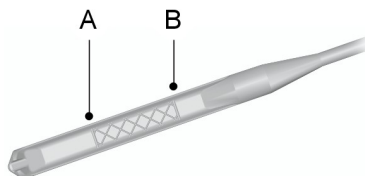
## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DURATEC-16V (SIGMA)



E95540

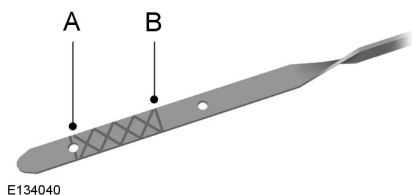
A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L ECOBOOST™



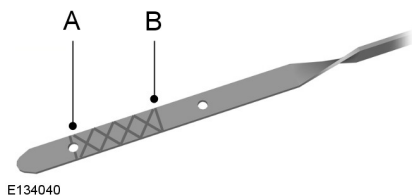
E124917

# Maintenance



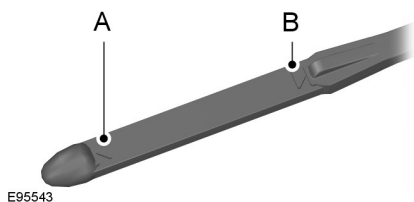
A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 2.0L DURATEC-HE (M14)



A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.6L DIESEL/2.0L DIESEL



A MIN  
B MAX

## ENGINE OIL CHECK

### CAUTION

! Do not use oil additives or other engine treatments. Under certain conditions, they could damage the engine.

**Note:** The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5000 kilometers (3000 miles).

## Checking the oil level

### CAUTION

! Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** Check the level before starting the engine.

**Note:** Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.

**Note:** Oil expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend a few millimeters beyond the **MAX** mark.

Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

## Topping up

### WARNINGS

! Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.

! Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Remove the filler cap.

# Maintenance

## WARNING



Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 211).

Replace the filler cap. Turn it until you feel a strong resistance.

## ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

### Checking the coolant level

## WARNING



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

## CAUTION



Make sure that the level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

**Note:** Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may therefore extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

If the level is at the **MIN** mark, top up immediately.

### Topping up

## WARNINGS



Only top up when the engine is cold. If the engine is hot, wait 10 minutes for the engine to cool down.



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

## WARNINGS



Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is hot. Wait for the engine to cool down.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilt on a hot exhaust.

## CAUTIONS



In an emergency, you can add just water to the cooling system to reach a vehicle service station. Have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.



Prolonged use of incorrect dilution of the coolant can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Unscrew the cap **slowly**. Any pressure will escape slowly as you unscrew the cap.

## CAUTION



Do not top up further than the **MAX** mark.

Top up with a 50/50 mixture of coolant and water using fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 211).

## BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

## WARNINGS



Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.

# Maintenance

## WARNINGS



If the level is at the **MIN** mark, have the system checked by a properly trained technician as soon as possible.

**Note:** Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

**Note:** The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification. See **Technical Specifications** (page 211).

## WASHER FLUID CHECK

**Note:** The front and rear washer systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

When topping up, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing in cold weather and improve the cleaning capability. We recommend that you use only high quality washer fluid.

For information on fluid dilution, refer to the product instructions.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle fluids

**Note:** Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by your Warranty.

Item	Specification	Viscosity Grade	Recommended fluid
Engine oil - gasoline engines only	WSS-M2C948-B	5W-20	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Alternative engine oil - all gasoline engines except 1.0L EcoBoost	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil
Engine oil - diesel engines	WSS-M2C913-C	5W-30	Castrol or Ford Engine Oil

# Maintenance

Item	Specification	Viscosity Grade	Recommended fluid
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D	-	Motorcraft SuperPlus Anti-freeze
Brake fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2	-	Motorcraft or Ford DOT 4 LV High Performance Brake Fluid

Your engine has been designed to be used with Castrol and Ford Engine Oil, which gives a fuel economy benefit whilst maintaining the durability of your engine.

**Topping up the oil:** If you are unable to find an oil that meets the specification defined by **WSS-M2C913-C** or **WSS-M2C948-B** (gasoline engines only), you must use **SAE 5W-30** that meets the specification defined by **ACEA A5/B5**.

Using topping up oils other than the one specified can result in longer engine cranking periods, reduced engine performance, reduced fuel economy and increased emission levels.

Castrol engine oil recommended.



## Capacities

Variant	Item	Capacity in Liters (gallons)
All gasoline engines except 2.0L EcoBoost - M14	Fuel tank	55 (12.1)
2.0L EcoBoost - M14	Fuel tank	62 (13.6)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Fuel tank	53 (11.7)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Fuel tank	60 (13.2)
All	Windshield washer system - with headlamp washers	4.5 (1)
All	Windshield washer system - without headlamp washers	3 (0.7)
1.0L EcoBoost	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.0L EcoBoost	Engine oil - without filter	4 (0.9)

# Maintenance

Variant	Item	Capacity in Liters (gallons)
1.0L EcoBoost	Cooling system	approx. 6.3 (1.4)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Engine oil - without filter	3.75 (0.8)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	Cooling system	approx. 5.8 (1.3)
1.6L EcoBoost	Engine oil - with filter	4.1 (0.9)
1.6L EcoBoost	Engine oil - without filter	3.75 (0.8)
1.6L EcoBoost	Cooling system	approx. 6.3 (1.4)
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4	Engine oil - with filter	4.3 (1)
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4	Engine oil - without filter	3.9 (0.9)
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4	Cooling system	approx. 6.5 (1.4)
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4	Engine oil - with filter	5.4 (1.2)
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4	Engine oil - without filter	5.1 (1.1)
2.0L EcoBoost - MI4	Cooling system	approx. 8.7 (1.9)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine oil - with filter	3.8 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Engine oil - without filter	3.5 (0.8)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	Cooling system	approx. 7.3 (1.6)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Engine oil - with filter	5.7 (1.3)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Engine oil - without filter	5.4 (1.2)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	Cooling system	approx. 8.5 (1.9)

## Engine oil top up capacities

Engine	Capacity in liters (gallons)
1.0L EcoBoost	0.8 (0.2)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT	0.8 (0.2)
1.6L EcoBoost	0.8 (0.2)

## Maintenance

---

Engine	Capacity in liters (gallons)
2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4 and 2.0L EcoBoost - MI4	0.9 (0.2)
1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	1.6 (0.4)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	1.8 (0.4)

# Vehicle Care

## CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

### WARNING



If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield.

### CAUTIONS



Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.



Some car wash installations use water at high pressure. This could damage certain parts of your vehicle.



Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.



Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

## Cleaning the headlamps

### CAUTIONS



Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.



Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

## Cleaning the rear window

### CAUTION



Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

## Cleaning the chrome trim

### CAUTION



Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

## Cleaning the alloy wheels

**Note:** Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.

**Note:** Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period time.

**Note:** Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.

**Note:** If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

**Note:** Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.




We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Vehicle Care

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

## Body paintwork preservation

### CAUTIONS



-  Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.
-  Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.
-  Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

## CLEANING THE INTERIOR

### Safety belts


#### WARNINGS

-  Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.
-  Do not allow moisture to penetrate the safety belt retractor mechanism.

Clean the safety belts with interior cleaner or water applied with a soft sponge. Let the safety belts dry naturally, away from artificial heat.



### Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens

#### WARNING

-  Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.


## Rear windows

### CAUTIONS

-  Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.
-  Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

### CAUTION

-  Remove apparently harmless looking substances from the paintwork immediately (e.g. bird droppings, tree resins, insect remains, tar spots, road salt and industrial fall out).

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products is available from your Ford Dealer. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

# Vehicle battery

## JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

### WARNING



Do not use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as grounding points.

### CAUTIONS



Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.

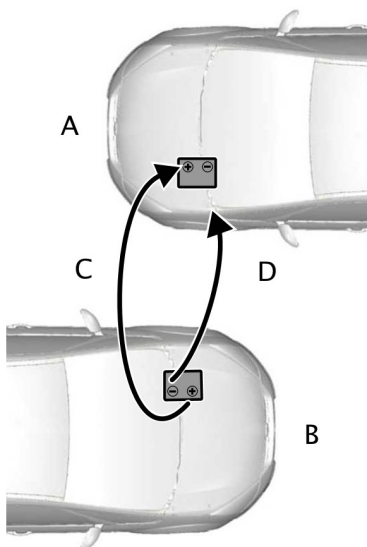


Always use booster cables with insulated clamps and adequate size cable.



Do not disconnect the battery from the vehicle's electrical system.

## To connect the booster cables



E102925

- A Flat battery vehicle
- B Booster battery vehicle
- C Positive connection cable
- D Negative connection cable

1. Position the vehicles so that they do not touch one another.
2. Switch off the engine and any electrical equipment.
3. Connect the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **B** with the positive (+) terminal of vehicle **A** (cable **C**).
4. Connect the negative (-) terminal of vehicle **B** to the ground connection of vehicle **A** (cable **D**). See **Battery connection points** (page 218).

# Vehicle battery

## CAUTIONS

❗ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**

❗ Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.

## BATTERY CONNECTION POINTS

### CAUTION

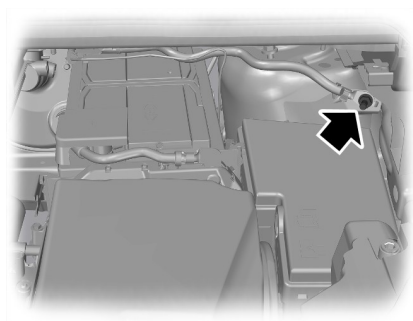
❗ **Do not connect to the negative (–) terminal of the flat battery.**

## To start the engine

1. Run the engine of vehicle **B** at moderately high speed.
2. Start the engine of vehicle **A**.
3. Run both vehicles for a minimum of three minutes before disconnecting the cables.

### CAUTION

❗ Do not switch on the headlamps when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.



E130431

The ground connection point is located to the right of the battery near the engine compartment fuse box.

Disconnect the cables in the reverse order.

## CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

### CAUTION

❗ For vehicles with Start-stop the battery requirement is different. It must be replaced by one of exactly the same specification as the original.


**Note:** Where applicable, the audio system must be reprogrammed with the keycode.


The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 198).


# Wheels and Tires

## GENERAL INFORMATION

### CAUTIONS

 Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

 If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take the vehicle to your dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

 If you intend to change the size of the wheels from that fitted at the factory, check the suitability with your dealer.

**Note:** Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening at the B-pillar.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive the vehicle and when the tires are cold.


## TEMPORARY MOBILITY KIT


Your vehicle may not have a spare tire. Therefore you will have an emergency kit which will only repair one flat tire.

The kit is located in the spare wheel well.

### General information

#### WARNINGS

 Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.

 Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated.

#### WARNINGS



Do not use the kit on run flat tires.



Do not try to seal damage to the tire's sidewall.

The kit seals most tire punctures [with a diameter of up to six millimeters (1/4 inch)] to temporarily restore mobility.

Observe the following rules when using the kit:

- Drive with caution and avoid making sudden steering or driving maneuvers, especially if the vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer.
- The kit will provide you with an emergency temporary repair, enabling you to continue your journey to the next vehicle or tire dealer, or to drive a maximum distance of 200 kilometers (125 miles).
- Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Keep the kit out of the reach of children.
- Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $-40^{\circ}\text{F}$ ) and  $+70^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $+158^{\circ}\text{F}$ ).

### Using the kit

#### WARNINGS



Compressed air can act as an explosive or propellant.



Never leave the kit unattended while in use.

#### CAUTION



Do not keep the compressor operating for more than 10 minutes.




# Wheels and Tires

**Note:** Use the kit only for the vehicle with which it was supplied.




- Park your vehicle at the roadside so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic and so that you are able to use the kit without being in danger.
- Apply the parking brake, even if you have parked on a level road, to make sure that the vehicle will not move.
- Do not attempt to remove foreign objects like nails or screws penetrating the tire.
- Leave the engine running while the kit is in use, but not if your vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated area (for example, inside a building). In these circumstances, switch the compressor on with the engine turned off.
- You must replace the sealant bottle with a new one before the expiry date (see top of bottle).
- Inform all other users of your vehicle that the tire has been temporarily sealed with the kit. Make them aware of the special driving conditions to be observed.

## Inflating the tire

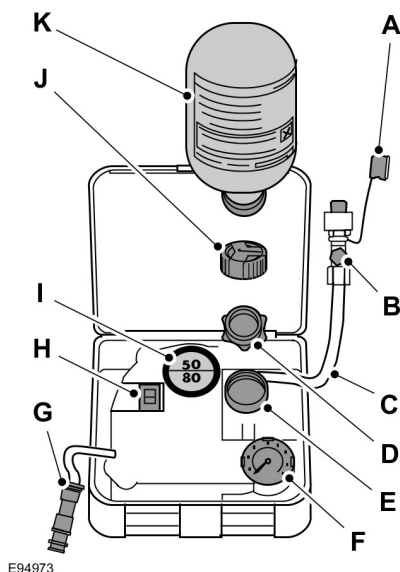
### WARNINGS

-  Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire.
-  Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is pumping.
-  Watch the sidewall of the tire. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, turn off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve B. Do not continue driving with this tire.

### WARNINGS

-  The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if you experience an adverse reaction.
-  If the tire inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi) within 10 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage, making a temporary repair impossible. In this case, do not continue driving with this tire.
-  Screwing the bottle onto the bottle holder will pierce the seal of the bottle. Do not unscrew the bottle from the holder as the sealant will escape.

# Wheels and Tires



- A Protective cap
- B Pressure relief valve
- C Hose
- D Orange cap
- E Bottle holder
- F Pressure gauge
- G Power plug with cable
- H Compressor switch
- I Label
- J Bottle lid
- K Sealant bottle

1. Open the lid of the tire repair kit.

2. Peel off the label I showing the maximum permissible speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
3. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable G out of the kit.
4. Unscrew the orange cap D and the bottle lid J.
5. Screw the sealant bottle K clockwise into the bottle holder E fully tight.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Detach the protective cap A from the hose C and screw the hose C firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch H is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug G into the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket. See **Cigar Lighter** (page 116). See **Auxiliary Power Points** (page 116).
10. Start the engine.
11. Move the compressor switch H to position 1.
12. Inflate the tire for no longer than 10 minutes to an inflation pressure of minimum 1.8 bar (26 psi) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi). Move the compressor switch H to position 0 and check the current tire pressure with pressure gauge F.

**Note:** When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.

**Note:** After you have switched the compressor off, you may hear air escaping from the damaged tire. This is normal and can be ignored provided that the specified minimum tire pressure has been reached.

# Wheels and Tires

13. Remove the power plug G from the cigar lighter socket or auxiliary power socket.
14. Quickly unscrew the hose C from the tire valve and replace the protective cap A. Fasten the valve cap again.

**Note:** *Some residual sealant fluid may drip or spray out of hose C while you are disconnecting it. This is normal.*

15. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E.
16. Make sure the kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in the vehicle. The kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately three kilometers (two miles) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

## WARNING



If you experience heavy vibrations, unsteady steering behavior or noises while driving, reduce your speed and drive with caution to a place where it is safe for you to stop the vehicle. Recheck the tire and its pressure. If the tire pressure is less than 1.3 bar (19 psi) or if there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage visible, do not continue driving with this tire.

## Checking the tire pressure

1. Stop the vehicle after driving approximately three kilometers (two miles). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the kit and read the tire pressure from the pressure gauge F.

3. If the pressure of the sealant-filled tire is 1.3 bar (19 psi) or more, adjust it to the specified pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).
4. Follow the inflation procedure once again to top up the tire.
5. Check the tire pressure again from the pressure gauge F. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B.
6. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch H to position O, remove the power plug G from the socket, unscrew the hose C, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
7. Leave the sealant bottle K in the bottle holder E and store the kit away safely in its original location.
8. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the rim, inform your tire dealer that the tire contains sealant. You must renew the sealant bottle K and hose C as soon as possible once used.

**Note:** *Remember that this kit only provides temporary mobility. Regulations concerning tire repair after usage of tire repair kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*

## WARNING



Before driving, make sure the tire is adjusted to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231). Monitor the tire pressure until the sealed tire is replaced.

# Wheels and Tires

Empty sealant bottles can be disposed of together with normal household waste. Return remains of sealant to your dealer or dispose of it in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## TIRE CARE



E70415

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals of between 5000 and 10000 kilometers (3000 and 6000 miles).

### CAUTION

! Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

## USING WINTER TIRES

### CAUTION

! Make sure that you use the correct lug nuts for the type of wheel the winter tires are fitted to.

If winter tires are used, make sure that the tire pressures are correct. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

## USING SNOW CHAINS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.6L/2.0L DURATEC-HE (MI4), 1.6L DIESEL/2.0L DIESEL

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

### CAUTION



If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** The ABS will continue to operate normally.

Only use small link snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

# Wheels and Tires

## Vehicles with stability control (ESP)

Vehicles with stability control (ESP) may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics which can be reduced by switching traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 140).

## USING SNOW CHAINS - 2.0L ECOBOOST™

### WARNINGS



Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).



Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).



If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

**Note:** *The ABS will continue to operate normally.*

Only use snow chains of 12 millimeters or smaller on 215/55 R 16 tires.

Only use snow chains of 10 millimeters or smaller on 215/50 R 17 tires.

Only use snow chains on the front wheels.

## Vehicles with stability control (ESP)

Vehicles with stability control (ESP) may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics which can be reduced by switching traction control off. See **Using Stability Control** (page 140).

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### WARNINGS



The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to regularly check the tire pressures.



The system will only provide a low tire pressure warning. It will not inflate the tires.



Do not drive on significantly under-inflated tires. This may cause the tires to overheat and fail. Under-inflation reduces fuel efficiency, tire tread life and may also affect your ability to drive the vehicle safely.

### CAUTIONS



Do not bend or damage the valves when you are inflating the tires.



Have tires installed by properly trained technicians.

The Deflation Detection System will alert you if there is a change of air pressure in any tire. It does this by using the ABS sensors to detect the rolling circumference of the wheels. When the circumference changes, this indicates low pressure in a tire, a warning message is displayed in the information display and the message indicator will illuminate. See **Information Messages** (page 86).

If a low pressure warning message is displayed in the information display, check the tire pressures as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

If this happens frequently, have the cause determined and rectified as soon as possible.

# Wheels and Tires

Apart from a too low tire pressure or a damaged tire, the following situations can affect the rolling circumference:

- Vehicle load is uneven.
- When using a trailer or traveling up and down an incline.
- Using snow chains.
- Driving on soft surfaces such as snow or mud.

**Note:** *The system will still function correctly, but there may be an increased detection time.*

## System reset

**Note:** *Do not reset the system when the vehicle is moving.*

**Note:** *You should reset the system following any adjustment to the tire pressures or any changing of tires.*

**Note:** *Turn the ignition on.*

1. Using the information display control, navigate to **Settings > Driver assist > Deflation detection**
2. Press and hold the **OK** button until confirmation appears.


## CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL

### Locking Lug Nuts








You can obtain a replacement locking lug nut key and replacement locking lug nuts from your dealer using the reference number certificate.

### Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

#### WARNINGS

 When stowing a wheel in the spare wheel well, to avoid the risk of injury, do not hold the wheel by the hole in the center.

#### WARNINGS

-  Drive the shortest possible distances.
-  Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.
-  Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.
-  Do not drive through an automatic car wash.
-  If you are unsure what type of spare wheel you have do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
-  On vehicles with a 2.0L EcoBoost SCTi (M14) engine, do not switch stability control off or select sport mode if you have fitted a temporary spare wheel to your vehicle.
-  Only fit snow chains to specified tires. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted road wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other road wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

**Note:** *Your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.*

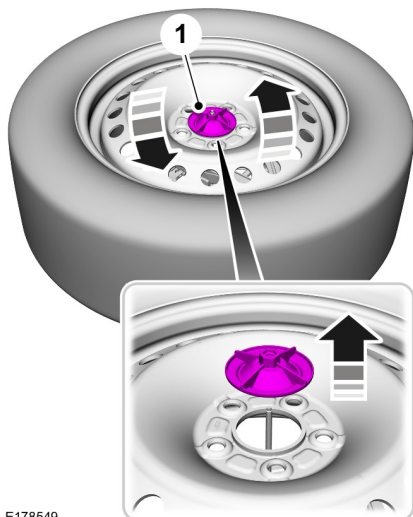
Refer to the following information before changing the road wheel.

**Note:** *The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.*

The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, lug nut tool and wheel trim remover are located in the luggage compartment underneath the floor covering.

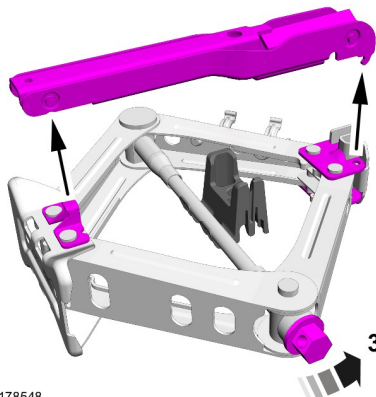
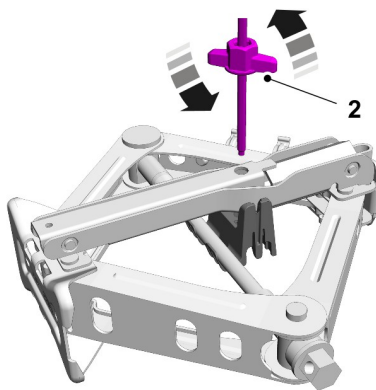
## Wheels and Tires

**Note:** The spare wheel, vehicle jack, towing eye, lug nut tool and wheel trim remover are located in the luggage compartment side panel on Wagon variants.



E178549

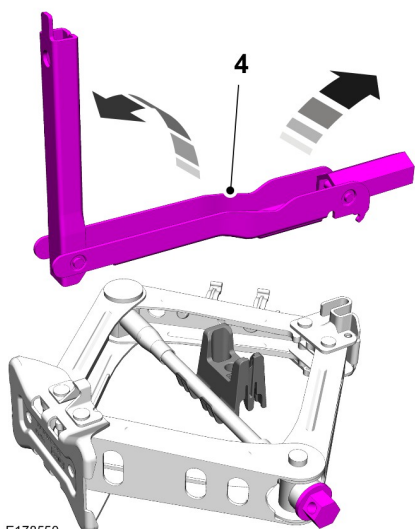
1. Turn the spare wheel securing nut counterclockwise and remove it. Remove the wheel from the spare wheel well.



E178548

2. Turn the vehicle jack securing bolt counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Turn the vehicle jack screw counterclockwise to remove the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool from the vehicle jack.

# Wheels and Tires



E178550

4. Unfold the vehicle jack handle and the hexagonal end into the correct position prior to use. Use the hexagonal end to operate the vehicle jack screw and to remove the lug nuts.





**Note:** Use the hook at the hexagonal end to remove the wheel trim.

## Vehicles Without a Spare Wheel

Vehicles without a spare wheel are fitted with a temporary mobility kit. See **Temporary Mobility Kit** (page 219).

## Vehicle Jack


### WARNINGS

-  The vehicle jack supplied with your vehicle should only be used when changing a wheel in emergency situations.
-  Before using the vehicle jack, check that it is not damaged or deformed and that the thread is lubricated and free from foreign matter.
-  Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground, or between the vehicle jack and the vehicle.
-  You must use a vehicle jack with a minimum lifting capacity of 1.5 tonnes and a lifting plate with a minimum diameter of 3 in (80 mm).

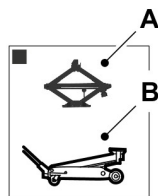
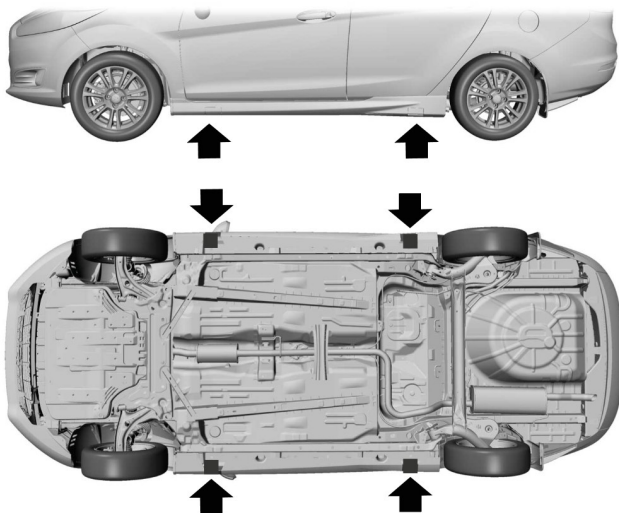
It is recommended to use a workshop type hydraulic jack for changing between summer and winter tires.

## Jacking and Lifting Points

### WARNING

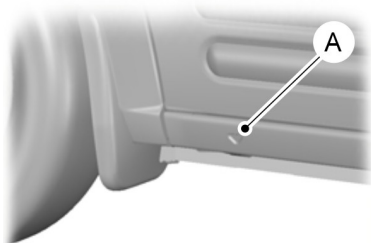
-  Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.

## Wheels and Tires



E92658

- A Emergency use only
- B Maintenance



E93302

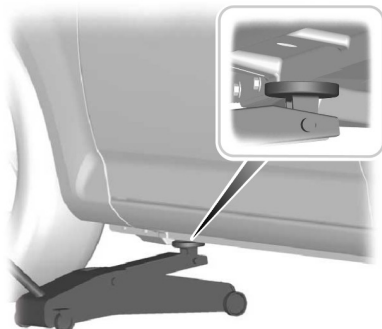
Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills **A** show the location of the jacking points.

# Wheels and Tires



E92932

Place the hexagonal end of the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack. Turn the jack handle clockwise to raise your vehicle.



E93020

Refer to vehicle jack manufacturer's instructions.

## Assembling the Wheel Brace

### WARNING



The screw-in towing eye has a **left-hand thread**. Turn it counterclockwise to install it. Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

## Type A



E122502

Insert the screw-in towing eye into the wheel brace.

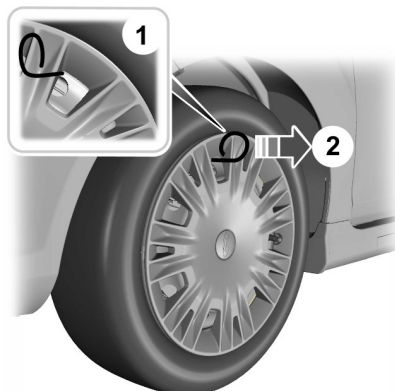
## Type B

See **Vehicles With a Spare Wheel** earlier in this section.

## Removing the Wheel Trim (If Equipped)

**Note:** Make sure that you pull the wheel trim remover at right angles to the trim.

## Type A



E122314

1. Insert the wheel trim remover.

# Wheels and Tires











2. Remove the wheel trim.

## Type B

1. Use the hook on the vehicle jack handle and lug nut tool to remove the wheel trim.

## Removing a Road Wheel

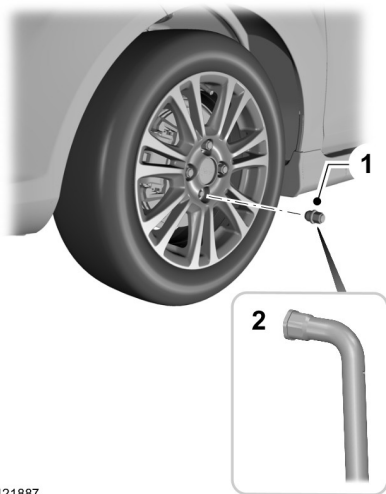
### WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that the vehicle is on firm, level ground with the wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch off the ignition and apply the parking brake.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, select first or reverse gear. If it has an automatic transmission, select park (P).
-  Have the passengers leave the vehicle.
-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when the vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare wheel with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction, have the tire refitted in the correct direction by a properly trained technician.
-  Do not work underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.
-  Make sure that the jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

**Note:** Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.

**Note:** The spare wheel is located under the floor cover in the luggage compartment.

1. Install the locking lug nut key.



E121887

2. Slacken the lug nuts.
3. Jack up the vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
4. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

## Installing a Road Wheel

### WARNINGS

-  Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage the vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).
-  Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Please contact an authorized dealer for more details regarding compatibility.

# Wheels and Tires

## WARNING



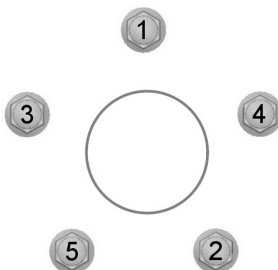
Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

**Note:** The lug nuts of alloy wheels and spoked steel wheels can also be used for the steel spare wheel for a short time (maximum two weeks).

**Note:** Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

**Note:** Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.
3. Install the locking lug nut key.



E75442

4. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack.
6. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page 231).
7. Install the wheel trim using the ball of your hand.

## WARNING



Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Tire pressures (cold tires) - All except 2.0L EcoBoost - MI4

#### Lug nut torque

Wheel type	Nm (lb-ft)
All	135 (100)

# Wheels and Tires

## Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )
All	T125/80 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)
All	T125/90 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)

## Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
All	205/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/55 R 16*	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16*	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)

## Wheels and Tires

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

### Continuous speed in excess of 160 km/h (100 mph)

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	205/55 R 16	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
1.6L EcoBoost	205/55 R 16	2.2 (32)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/55 R 16	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/55 R 16	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
1.0L EcoBoost, 1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	215/50 R 17	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)

# Wheels and Tires

Variant	Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
		Front	Rear	Front	Rear
		bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	215/50 R 17	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
1.6L Duratec-16V Ti-VCT, 1.6L EcoBoost, 2.0L Duratec-HE - MI4, 1.6L Duratorq-TDCi	235/40 R 18	2.1 (31)	2.1 (31)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
2.0L Duratorq-TDCi - DW	235/40 R 18	2.3 (33)	2.1 (31)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)

## Tire pressures (cold tires) - 2.0L EcoBoost - MI4

### Lug nut torque

Wheel type	Nm (lb-ft)
All	135 (100)

## Temporary spare wheel - Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)

### WARNING



Do not switch stability control off if you have fitted a temporary spare wheel to your vehicle.

**Note:** In some vehicles, you may need to remove the spare wheel from the storage compartment to check the tire pressure.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )
T125/80 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)
T125/90 R 16	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)	4.2 (61)

# Wheels and Tires

## Temporary spare wheel - Up to 120 km/h (75 mph)

### WARNING



Do not switch stability control off if you have fitted a temporary spare wheel to your vehicle.

**Note:** In some vehicles, you may need to remove the spare wheel from the storage compartment to check the tire pressure.

Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )	bar (lbf/in <sup>2</sup> )
205/55 R 16	3 (44)	3 (44)	3 (44)	3 (44)

## Up to 220 km/h (137 mph)

Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55 R 16*	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
215/50 R 17*	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)

\*Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

## Continuous speed in excess of 220 km/h (137 mph)

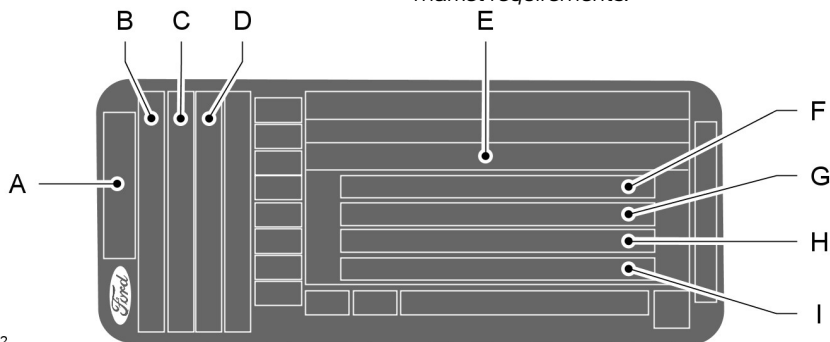
Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
215/55 R 16	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)	2.8 (41)
215/50 R 17	2.5 (36)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)	2.8 (41)
235/40 R 18	2.4 (35)	2.4 (35)	2.5 (36)	2.5 (36)

# Vehicle identification

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

**Note:** The vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

**Note:** The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependant upon market requirements.



E135662

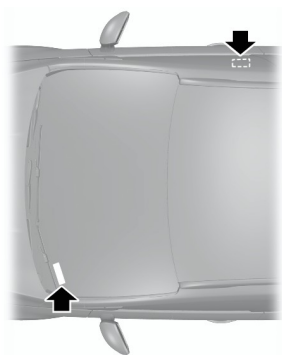
- A Model
- B Variant
- C Engine designation
- D Emission level
- E Vehicle identification number
- F Gross vehicle weight
- G Gross train weight
- H Maximum front axle weight
- I Maximum rear axle weight

The vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate located on the lock side of the right-hand door aperture at the bottom.

# Vehicle identification

---

## VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER



E87496

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, beside the front seat. It is also shown on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.

# Capacities and Specifications

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

### Vehicle dimensions

#### 4-door

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Maximum length	4534 (178.5)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2010 (79.1)
Overall height - EC curb weight	1451 - 1484 (57.1 - 58.4)
Wheelbase	2648 (104.3)
Front track	1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)
Rear track	1534 - 1549 (60.4 - 61)

#### 5-door

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Maximum length	4358 - 4412 (171.6 - 173.7)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2010 (79.1)
Overall height - EC curb weight	1451 - 1484 (57.1 - 58.4)
Wheelbase	2648 (104.3)
Front track	1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)
Rear track	1534 - 1549 (60.4 - 61)

#### Wagon

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Maximum length	4556 - 4606 (179.4 - 181.3)
Overall width including exterior mirrors	2010 (79.1)
Overall height - EC curb weight	1472 - 1505 (58 - 59.3)

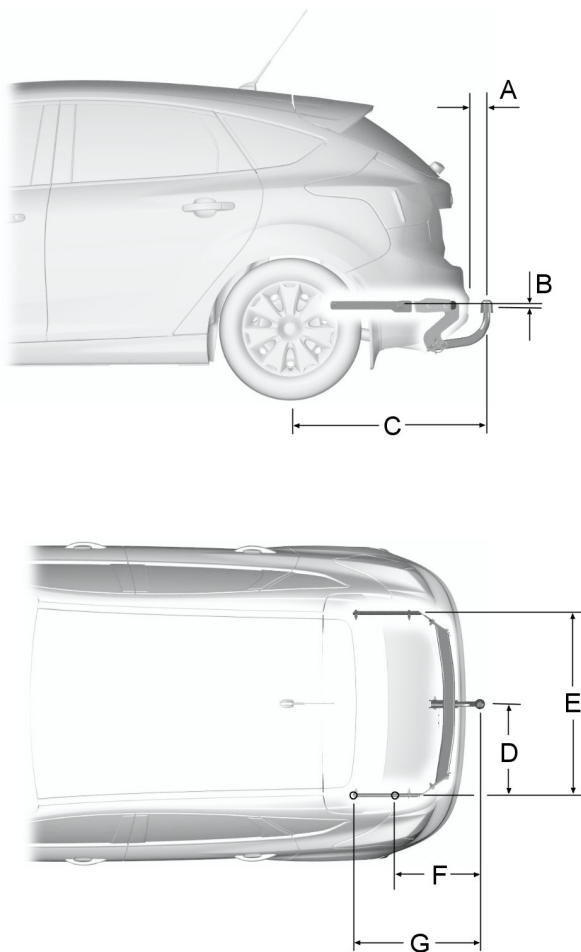
## Capacities and Specifications

---

Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
Wheelbase	2648 (104.3)
Front track	1544 - 1559 (60.8 - 61.4)
Rear track	1534 - 1549 (60.4 - 61)

# Capacities and Specifications

## Towing equipment dimensions



E132737

# Capacities and Specifications

## 4-door

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – center of tow ball	77 - 80 (3 - 3.1)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball	3 (0.1)
C	Wheel center – center of tow ball	1068 - 1071 (42 - 42.2)
D	Center of tow ball – side member	515 (20.3)
E	Distance between side members	1030 (40.6)
F	Center of tow ball – center 1. attachment point	447 - 450 (17.6 -17.7)
G	Center of tow ball – center 2. attachment point	747 - 750 (29.4 - 29.5)

## 5-door

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – center of tow ball	81 - 83 (3.2 - 3.3)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball	3 (0.1)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball (detachable trailer coupling)	18 (0.7)
C	Wheel center – center of tow ball	896 - 898 (35.3 - 35.4)
D	Center of tow ball – side member	515 (20.3)
E	Distance between side members	1030 (40.6)
F	Center of tow ball – center 1. attachment point	396 - 398 (15.6 - 15.7)
G	Center of tow ball – center 2. attachment point	696 - 698 (27.4 - 27.5)

## Capacities and Specifications

---

### Wagon

Item	Dimension description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Bumper – center of tow ball	81 (3.2)
B	Attachment point – center of tow ball	72 - 77 (2.8 - 3)
C	Wheel center – center of tow ball	1094 (43.1)
D	Center of tow ball – side member	586 (23.1)
E	Distance between side members	1172 (46.1)
F	Center of tow ball – center 1. attachment point	474 (18.7)
G	Center of tow ball – center 2. attachment point	719 (28.3)

### Maximum Permissible Nose Weight

lb (kg)
165 lb (75 kg)

# Navigation

Press the relevant button on the unit bezel to access the system functions. This will take you into the selected mode.

For instructions on how to operate the audio unit and the available navigation features, see the relevant audio unit procedure.

## Loading Map Data

### WARNINGS



The indicated maximum speed may not be applicable to your vehicle. It is always your responsibility to control your vehicle, supervise any system and obey the correct speed limit. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.



The front glass on the liquid crystal display may break if hit with a hard object. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with the skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

**Note:** Do not switch the ignition on or attempt to start the engine while the software is updating.

**Note:** Do not clean the unit with solvents or aerosol cleaning agents. Use only a damp cloth.

**Note:** The navigation SD card must be in the SD card slot to operate the navigation system. If you need a replacement SD card, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** The SD card slot is spring-loaded. To remove the SD card, push the card in and release it. Do not attempt to remove the card without first pushing it in. This could cause damage.



E129900

1. Load the navigation SD card into the slot.
2. Press the **NAV** button. The road safety warning confirms the map data import was successful.
3. The system is now ready to use.

For map updates and system upgrades, see an authorized dealer.

**Note:** You can only use Ford licensed data.

## Road Safety

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

# Navigation

**Note:** You are ultimately responsible for the safe operation of your vehicle and must evaluate whether it is safe to follow route suggestions. Navigation features are provided only as an aid. Driving decisions based on observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations must be observed. Do not follow route suggestions if they would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate due to errors, changes in roads, traffic or driving conditions.

## Safety Information

If detailed viewing of route instructions is necessary, pull off the road when it is safe to do so and park your vehicle.

## Setting a Route

Press the <b>NAV</b> button and select:	
Destination input	Starting at the top, select the country followed by either the postcode or city and street name, together with the house number or intersection. Use the arrow buttons to enter the destination details.
Start guidance	Select this after entering sufficient information.

**Note:** After the first entry, the country selected will remain the default option until you manually change it.

The route is calculated and the screen returns to the main navigation screen. If prompted, select the type of route you require first. Follow the screen and voice prompts to reach your destination.

**Note:** If required you can select different character screens by using the up and down arrow buttons.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a city center, just enter the city name and start guidance.

**Note:** If you only need to navigate to a district, within a city for example, just enter the district name and start guidance.

## Menu Structure

You can access the menu using the information and entertainment display control. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

For a description on some menu items refer to the relevant table.

**Note:** Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if the items are optional.

# Navigation

## Navigation Menu Structure

Route	Active guidance
	Route sections list
	Block next section
	Unblock route sections
Destination input	Country
	City/postcode
	Street
	District
	Start guidance
Traffic	TA
	TMC for route
	All TMC
	Block next section
	Route sections list
	Unblock route sections
Home address	Start guidance
	Change address
Last destinations	
Favourites	Favourites (A-Z)
Points of interest	POIs nearby
	Near destination
	Along motorway
	POIs near address
	Search by name
Tour planning	New tour
	Stored tours

# Navigation

Store position		
Route options	Route	Eco
		Fast
		Short
		Always ask
	Driver:	Leisurely
		Normal
		Fast
	Eco settings	Trailer:
		Roof box
	Dynamic	
	Motorway	
	Tunnel	
	Ferry/motorail	
	Toll	
	Seasonal roads	
	Toll sticker	
Special functions	GPS info	
	System info	
	Enter position	
	Demo mode	

## Route Options

Press the **NAV** button and scroll to route options. You can then set your route options for any of the following.

# Navigation

Function		Description
Route:	Always ask	Select to make sure that you are always given the choice of route option for your journey.
Eco		Uses the most fuel efficient route. Your driving style will influence this.
Fast		Uses the fastest route possible.
Short		Uses the shortest distance possible.
Driver:	Leisurely	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a leisurely drive to the destination.
	Normal	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a normal drive to the destination.
	Fast	This option will calculate your time of arrival based on a fast drive to the destination.
Eco settings	Trailer:	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to whether or not you are towing a trailer and if so the size of trailer being towed.
	Roof box	Use this feature to change the economy settings of your journey relating to the use of a roof box.
	Dynamic	When switched on, and if the unit is receiving a valid traffic message channel signal, the route will be automatically updated to take into account real time traffic incidents or congestion. This feature can be useful in avoiding delays or hold ups on journeys.
	Motorway	When switched off the system will avoid freeways on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Tunnel	When switched off the system will avoid tunnels on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.

# Navigation

Function		Description
	Ferry/motorail	When switched off the system will avoid ferry crossings and car train facilities on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll	When switched off the system will avoid toll roads on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Seasonal roads	When switched off the system will avoid seasonal roads (for example, mountain passes) on your route and automatically update your route distance and timings.
	Toll sticker	When switched off the system will avoid toll routes and automatically update your route distance and timings.

## Information

Press the information button to view details of your current location or journey. During active route guidance pressing this button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

## Setting Your Navigation Preferences

Select settings for the system to take into account when planning your route.

**Press the NAV button and choose any of the following options.**

When You Select	You Can
Destination input	Enter your destination details (for example enter city names, enter street names or pick a place from a map).
Traffic	Choose how you want the system to handle traffic problems along your route (for example, block sections on route).
Home address	See the location on the map currently stored as the home position. Only one entry can be saved as the home address.
Last destinations	Access a history of previous destinations entered in the system. Select the required repeat destination from the list.
Favourites	See a list of your saved favorites.
Points of interest	Search for and select points of interest nearby, on your route or at your destination. You can search by name or by category.

# Navigation

When You Select	You Can
Tour planning	Set up and store a new tour by entering a number of different destinations and select the order in which you wish to visit them. You can also modify an existing tour or recall a previous tour. The system will automatically calculate and display your chosen journey.
Store position	Store and name your current position. This will automatically save in your favorites.
Route options	Set your route options from the available list.
Special functions	Select GPS and system information or a demonstration of the system functionality. Select a demonstration mode where the system will simulate a journey whilst the vehicle is stationary. You can manually select a vehicle start position.

**Press the MENU button, select the navigation option and choose any of the following options.**

When You Select	You Can
Route options	Set your route options.
Map display	Customize the map display for your journey (for example arrows on map, arrival times and map content).
Assistance options	Customize display information for your journey (for example signs, lanes and speed limits). Turn the hazard warning feature on or off.
Personal data	Delete personal data (for example your home address).
Reset all settings	Reset the navigation settings.

## Storing Your Home Address

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the home address option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the confirm function button.

**Note:** Your last destination will automatically display if you go to change your home address.

## Adding a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Scroll to the destination input option.
3. Enter the required details using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the store function button.

**Note:** If you select store position, this will also save the destination in your favorites.

# Navigation

## Selecting a Favorite

1. Press the **NAV** button.
2. Select the favorites option.
3. Scroll to the required destination using the arrow buttons.
4. Press the **OK** button to start navigation.

## Adjusting the Navigation Voice Level

You can adjust the voice prompt level during an active voice prompt by using the volume control.

**Note:** During active route guidance pressing the information button will repeat the last navigation instruction.

## Nav Audio Mixing

This feature allows you to adjust the volume mix between the audio unit and navigation voice level.

## Tolerant Destination Input

This function will search a number of destinations with a similar spelling to what you have entered. This is helpful if you are unsure on how to spell a destination.

Tolerant	Press the <b>NAV</b> button and scroll to this destination input option before entering your destination details.
----------	---

Then begin to input your destination. Press the **OK** button. The system will search for destinations with similar spellings. Use the arrow buttons to select a destination from the list and press the **OK** button to confirm your destination.

## Route Displays

### Map Display

Press the **MAP** button to view map mode. This view will show your current location with your vehicle in the center shown as an arrow surrounded by a circle. The arrow will face in the direction of travel.

The information on the top line gives the name of the current road, or the next road to take if a turn is approaching.

You can change the way the map is displayed by altering the zoom and orientation settings. Press function button one. The current map scale is shown on the display.

Map scale settings may be set between 0.05 miles to 500 miles or 50 meters to 500 kilometers, with an auto setting on the top. The auto setting continuously changes the map scale according to vehicle speed and the road type being driven.

You can use the arrow buttons to change the view to 2D, turn-by-turn, 3D or a clean view.

### Zoom

This feature will automatically increase the zoom on the map display at times when you are required to make a turn, or perform more complex maneuvers. Shortly after the zoom scale will return to the previous level when in auto mode.

Manual: Press function button one and adjust the setting using the left or right arrow buttons. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

Auto: Press function button one and using the up or down arrow key select the auto option. Press **OK** to confirm your setting.

# Navigation

## Move

When you are in map mode, press function button two. You can now use the arrow buttons on the audio unit to move around the map.

Press function button two again to return to the original view.

## Navigation Display

After commencing a navigation route, the default screen is the main navigation screen.

Once an active route is underway, guidance will be given by on-screen information and voice prompts. Whichever audio source you wish to leave the unit in, basic turn by turn and distance information will remain on the screen in the form of a graphic inset. You do not need to leave the unit on the main navigation screen when you are navigating a route. Press the **MAP** button at any time to return to the main navigation screen. Slightly more detailed information on your route may be available using the main navigation screen if required.

## Hazard Spot Warning

The system supports a hazard spot warning feature which informs you with visible and audible feedback about hazardous traffic areas.

Assistance options	You can switch the system on and off using the information and entertainment display menu. Refer to this option in the navigation menu.
--------------------	---

**Note:** *This feature is only available in certain countries.*

## Navigation Map Updates

Annual navigation map updates are available for purchase. See an authorized dealer.

## Type Approvals



SD Logo is a trademark.

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.

# Audio introduction

## IMPORTANT AUDIO INFORMATION

### WARNINGS



Due to technical incompatibility, recordable (CD-R) and rewritable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.



These CD radio units will play compact discs that conform to the International Red Book standard audio specification. Copy protected CDs from some manufacturers do not conform to this standard and playback cannot be guaranteed.



Dual format, dual sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format), adopted by the music industry, are thicker than normal CDs and consequently playback cannot be guaranteed, and jamming could occur. Irregular shaped CDs and CDs with a scratch protection film or self adhesive labels attached should not be used. Warranty claims, where this type of disc is found to be inside an audio unit returned for repair, will not be accepted.



All CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm audio compact discs only.



The audio unit may be damaged if unsuitable items like credit cards or coins are pushed inside the CD aperture.

CAUTION—INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN  
DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR  
VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS

## Disc labels

### Audio CD



### MP3



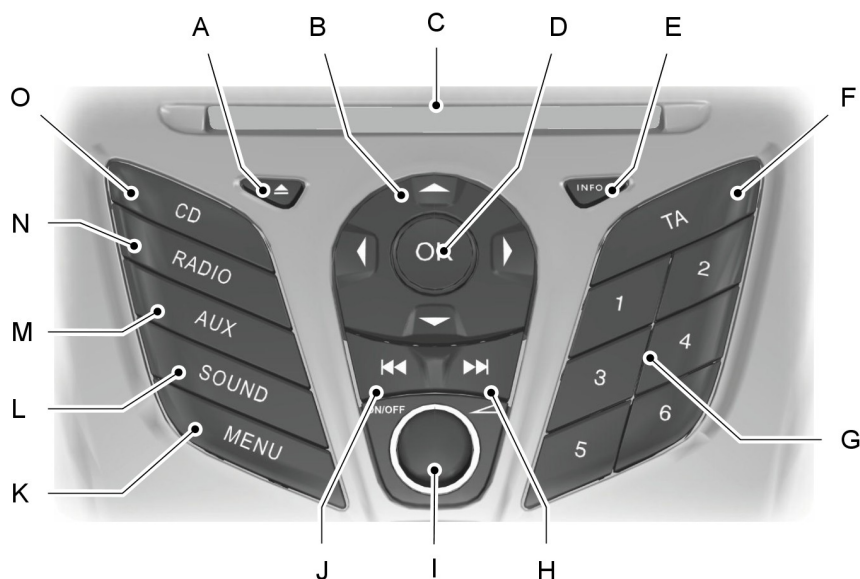
## Audio unit labels

CLASS 1  
LASER PRODUCT

# Audio unit overview

**Note:** Units have an integrated multi function display situated above the CD aperture. This shows important information regarding control of your audio unit. Additionally, there are various icons placed around the display screen which light up when a function is active (for example CD, Radio or Aux.)

## Type 1



E130324

- A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.

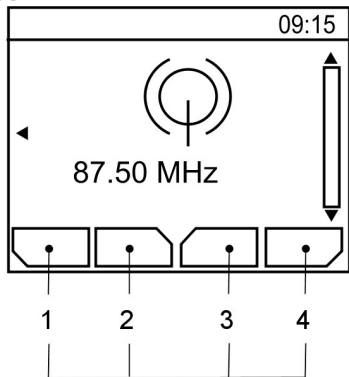
## Audio unit overview

---

- F **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 263).
- G **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Station preset buttons** (page 263).
- H **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267).
- I **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- J **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267).
- K **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- L **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 262).
- M **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio Input Jack** (page 117). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 270).
- N **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 262).
- O **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).

## Audio unit overview

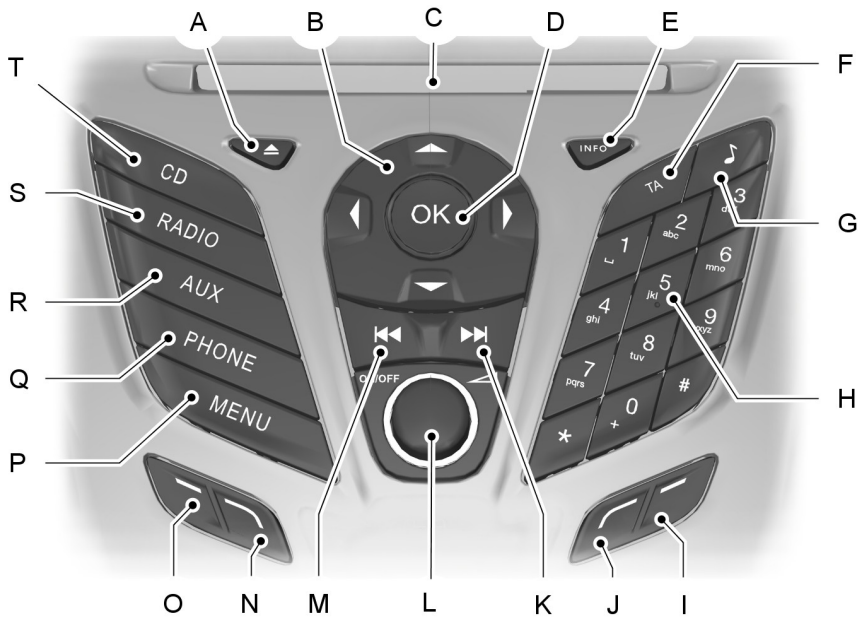
## Type 2



E104157

A

A Descriptions for function buttons  
1-4



E130142

## Audio unit overview

---

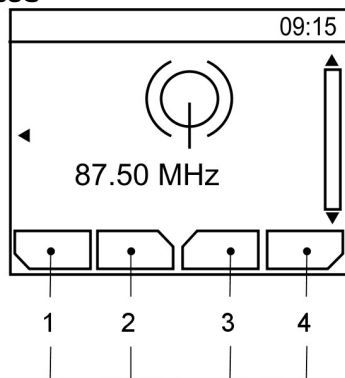
- A **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- B **Cursor arrows:** Press a button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- C **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- D **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- E **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- F **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 263).
- G **Sound:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 262).
- H **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276). See **Station preset buttons** (page 263).
- I **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- J **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- K **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267).
- L **On, Off and Volume:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off. Turn the dial to adjust the volume.
- M **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267).
- N **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- O **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- Q **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual. See **SYNC™** (page 272).
- R **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio Input Jack** (page 117). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 270). See **SYNC™** (page 272).

## Audio unit overview

- S **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 262).
- T **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.

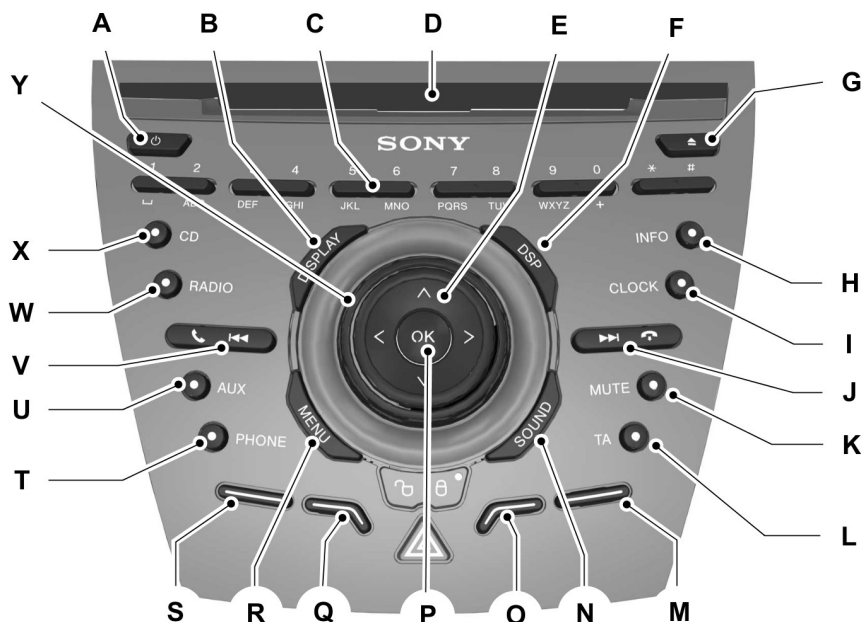
**Type 3**



E104157

- A Descriptions for function buttons 1-4

## Audio unit overview



E129074

- A **On, Off:** Press the button to switch the audio system on or off.
- B **DISPLAY:** Press the button to turn on the display into idle mode.
- C **Numeric keypad:** Press the button to recall a previously stored station. To store a favorite station press and hold until the sound returns. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276). See **Station preset buttons** (page 263).
- D **CD slot:** Where you insert a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- E **Cursor arrows:** Press the button to scroll through on-screen choices.
- F **Digital signal processing:** Press the button to access the digital signal processing functions. See **Digital signal processing (DSP)** (page 265).
- G **Eject:** Press the button to eject a CD. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- H **INFO:** Press the button to access radio, CD, USB and iPod information.
- I **CLOCK:** Press the button to access the clock functions.

## Audio unit overview

---

- J **Seek up:** Press the button to go to the next station up the radio frequency band or the next track on a CD when in CD mode. In phone mode, use the button to end a phone call. An incoming call can be rejected. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267). See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276).
- K **MUTE:** Press the button to turn the sound off, press again to turn the sound on.
- L **TA:** Press the button to turn traffic announcements on or off and cancels announcements during an active announcement. See **Traffic information control** (page 263).
- M **Function button 4:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- N **SOUND:** Press the button to adjust the sound settings for bass, treble, middle, balance and fade. See **Sound button** (page 262).
- O **Function button 3:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- P **OK:** Press the button to confirm on-screen selections.
- Q **Function button 2:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- R **MENU:** Press the button to access different audio system features.
- S **Function button 1:** Press the button to select different functions of the audio system depending on which mode (i.e. radio or CD) you are in.
- T **PHONE:** Press the button to access the phone feature of the SYNC system by pressing **PHONE** then **MENU**. See separate manual. See **SYNC™** (page 272).
- U **AUX:** Press the button to access the AUX and SYNC features, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio Input Jack** (page 117). See **Auxiliary input jack** (page 270).
- V **Seek down:** Press the button to go to the next station down the radio frequency band or the previous track on a CD, When in CD mode. In phone mode use the button to begin a phone call. An incoming phone call can be accepted. See **Station tuning control** (page 262). See **Track selection** (page 267). See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276).
- W **RADIO:** Press the button to select different radio bands, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Audio unit operation** (page 262).
- X **CD:** Press the button to change source to CD, it will also cancel the menu or list browsing. See **Compact Disc Player** (page 267).
- Y **Volume:** Turn the dial to adjust the volume.

## Audio unit overview

---

Function buttons 1 to 4 are context dependent, and change according to the current unit mode. Descriptions for the functions are shown at the bottom of the screen display.

## SECURITY CODE

Each unit incorporates a unique code that is linked to the vehicle identification number (VIN). The system will automatically check that the audio unit and vehicle match before allowing operation.

If a security code message appears, please see your dealer.

# Audio unit operation

---

## ON/OFF CONTROL

Press the button with the ignition switched off. This will operate the audio unit for up to one hour.

If you switch the audio unit on before you switch the ignition off, the audio unit will switch off automatically after 10 minutes or when you open one of the front doors.

## SOUND BUTTON

This will allow you to adjust the sound settings (for example bass and treble).

1. Press the sound button.
2. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to make the necessary adjustment. The display indicates the level selected.
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm the new settings.

## WAVEBAND BUTTON

Press the RADIO button to select from the wavebands available.

The selector can also be used to return to radio reception when you have been listening to another source.

Alternatively, press the left arrow button to display the available wavebands. Scroll to the required waveband and press OK.

## STATION TUNING CONTROL

### DAB service linking

**Note:** *The DAB service linking is as per default off.*

**Note:** *Service linking allows cross-referencing to other corresponding frequencies of the same station, for example FM and other DAB ensembles.*

**Note:** *The system will automatically change to another corresponding station if the current one becomes unavailable, for example when leaving the coverage area.*

Switching DAB service linking on and off. See **General Information** (page 79).

### Seek tuning

Select a waveband and briefly press one of the seek buttons. The unit will stop at the first station it finds in the direction you have chosen.

### Manual tuning

#### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then MANUAL TUNE.
3. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

#### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 2.
2. Use the left and right arrow buttons to tune down or up the waveband in small increments or press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
3. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

# Audio unit operation

## Scan tuning

Scan allows you to listen to a few seconds of each station detected.

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select RADIO mode and then SCAN.
3. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
4. Press OK to continue listening to a station.

### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 3.
2. Use the seek buttons to scan up or down the selected waveband.
3. Press function button 3 again or OK to continue listening to a station.

## STATION PRESET BUTTONS

This feature allows you to store your favorite stations so that they can be recalled by selecting the appropriate waveband and pressing one of the preset buttons.

1. Select a waveband.
2. Tune to the station required.
3. Press and hold one of the preset buttons. A progress bar and message will appear. When the progress bar completes the station has been stored. The audio unit will also mute momentarily as confirmation.

This can be repeated on each waveband and for each preset button.

**Note:** *When you drive to another part of the country, FM and DAB stations that broadcast on alternative frequencies, and are stored on preset buttons, may be updated with the correct frequency and station name for that area.*

## AUTOSTORE CONTROL

**Note:** *This will store up to a maximum of the 10 strongest signals available, either from the AM or the FM waveband, and overwrite the previously stored stations. It can also be used to store stations manually in the same way as other wavebands.*

**Note:** *On type 3 you must select either FM AST or AM AST to use this function.*

- Press and hold function button 1 or the RADIO button.
- When the search is complete, sound is restored and the strongest signals are stored on the Autostore presets.

## TRAFFIC INFORMATION CONTROL

Many stations that broadcast on the FM waveband have a TP code to signify that they carry traffic program information.

### Activating traffic announcements

Before you can receive traffic announcements, you must press either the TA or TRAFFIC button. A 'TA' display will appear to show the feature is switched on.

If you are already tuned to a station that broadcasts traffic information, 'TP' will also be displayed. Otherwise the unit will search for a traffic program.

When traffic information is broadcast, it will automatically interrupt normal radio or CD playback and 'Traffic announcement (TA)' will appear in the display.

If a non-traffic station is selected or recalled using a preset button, the audio unit will remain on that station unless TA or TRAFFIC is turned off, then on again.

**Note:** *If TA is on and you select a preset or manual tune to a non TA station no traffic announcement will be heard.*

# Audio unit operation

---

**Note:** *When you are listening to a non TA station and turn TA off and on again a TP seek will occur.*

## Traffic announcement volume

Traffic announcements interrupt normal broadcasts at a preset minimum level that is usually louder than normal listening volumes.

To adjust the preset volume:

- Use the volume control to make the necessary adjustment during an incoming TA broadcast. The display will show the level selected.

## Ending traffic announcements

The audio unit will return to normal operation at the end of each traffic announcement. To end the announcement prematurely, press TA or TRAFFIC during the announcement.

**Note:** *If you press TA or TRAFFIC at any other time it will switch all announcements off.*

## AUTOMATIC VOLUME CONTROL

When available, automatic volume control (AVC) adjusts the volume level to compensate for engine noise and road speed noise.

1. Press the MENU button and select AUDIO.
2. Select AVC LEVEL or ADAPTIVE VOL.
3. Use the left or right arrow button to adjust the setting.
4. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
5. Press the MENU button to return.

## DIGITAL SIGNAL PROCESSING (DSP)

### DSP occupancy

This feature takes into account the differences in distance from the various speakers in the vehicle to each seat. Select the sitting position for which the audio is to be correctly enhanced.

### DSP equalizer

Select the music category that most suits your listening preference. The audio output will change to enhance the particular style of music chosen.

### Changing the DSP settings

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to the required DSP function.
4. Use the up and down arrow buttons to select the required setting.
5. Press the OK button to confirm your selection.
6. Press the MENU button to return.

## NEWS BROADCASTS

Some audio units interrupt normal reception to broadcast news bulletins from stations on the FM waveband or radio data system (RDS) and enhanced other network (EON) linked stations, in the same way as traffic information is provided.

During news broadcasts, the display will indicate there is an incoming announcement. News interrupts are broadcast at the same preset volume level as traffic announcements.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to NEWS and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

## ALTERNATIVE FREQUENCIES

Many programs that broadcast on the FM waveband have a program identification (PI) code, which can be recognized by audio units.

If your radio has alternative frequencies (AF) tuning switched on and you move from one transmission area to another, this facility will search for and switch to a stronger station signal, if one can be found.

Under certain conditions, however, AF tuning may temporarily disrupt normal reception.

When selected, the unit continually evaluates signal strength and, if a better signal becomes available, the unit will switch to that alternative. It mutes while it checks a list of alternative frequencies and, if necessary, it will search once across the selected waveband for a genuine alternative frequency.

## Audio unit menus

---

It will restore radio reception when it finds one or, if one is not found, the unit will return to the original stored frequency.

When selected, 'AF' will be shown in the display.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO MENU.
3. Scroll to ALTERNAT FREQ. or ALTERNATIVE FREQ. and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

### REGIONAL MODE (REG)

Regional mode (REG) controls the behavior of AF switching between regionally related networks of a parent broadcaster. A broadcaster may run a fairly large network across a large part of the country. At various times of the day this large network may be broken down into a number of smaller regional networks, typically centered on major towns or cities. When the network is not split into regional variants, the whole network carries the same programming.

Regional mode ON: This prevents 'random' AF switches when neighboring regional networks are not carrying the same programming.

Regional mode OFF: This allows a larger coverage area if neighboring regional networks are carrying the same programming, but can cause 'random' AF switches if they are not.

1. Press the MENU button.
2. Select AUDIO or AUDIO SETTINGS.
3. Scroll to RDS REGIONAL and turn on or off with the OK button.
4. Press the MENU button to return.

# Compact Disc Player

---

## COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

**Note:** During playback, the display indicates the disc, track and time that has elapsed since the start of the track.

During radio reception, press the CD button once to start CD playback.

Playback will start immediately after a disc is loaded.

## TRACK SELECTION

- Press the seek up button once to move to the next track or press it repeatedly to access later tracks.
- Press the seek down button once to replay the current track. If pressed within two seconds of the start of a track, the previous track will be selected.
- Press the seek down button repeatedly to select previous tracks.
- Press the up or down arrow buttons, and using the OK button, select the required track.

### Type 2 and 3

The desired track number may be entered using the numeric keypad. Dial the required track number until complete (for example 1 then 2 for track 12), or dial the number and directly press OK.

## FAST FORWARD/REVERSE

Press and hold the seek down or up buttons to search backwards or forwards within the tracks on the disc.

## SHUFFLE/RANDOM

Random track playback, also known as shuffle, plays all tracks on the CD in random order.

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SHUFFLE, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order.

### Type 2 and 3

Press function button 2.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SHUFFLE for the whole CD, or to play all the tracks in the folder in a random order. Repeat presses of function button 2 will toggle these options.

Use the seek up or down button to select the next track to shuffle if required.

## REPEAT COMPACT DISC TRACKS

### Type 1

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select REPEAT, which then enables the function to be selected on or off. The track will replay once ended.

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder.

### Type 2 and 3

Press function button 1.

# Compact Disc Player

---

When an MP3 CD is playing, options include REPEAT for the track, or to repeat all the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 1 will toggle these options.

## COMPACT DISC TRACK SCANNING

The SCAN function allows you to preview each track for approximately 5 seconds.

### Type 1

Various scan modes are possible, according to the type of CD currently playing.

1. Press the MENU button and select CD MODE.
2. Select SCAN, which then enables the function to be selected on or off.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder.

3. Press the OK button to stop the scan mode.

### Type 2 and 3

1. Press function button 3.

**Note:** When an MP3 CD is playing, options include SCAN for the CD, or just the tracks in the folder. Repeat presses of function button 3 will toggle these options.

2. Press function button 3 again to stop the scan mode.

## MP3 FILE PLAYBACK

**Note:** Some copy protected audio files may not be read by the CD player.

The CD player also supports MP3 and WMA format audio files.

When a CD containing audio is inserted into the CD player the disc's directory structure is read in. It may take a while before playback starts and is dependant on the quality of the disc.

MP3 tracks may be recorded on the CD in several ways. They can all be placed in the root directory like a conventional audio CD, or they can be placed in folders that may represent, for example, an album, an artist, or a genre.

### Playing a multi session disc

The normal playing sequence on CD's with multiple folders is to play the tracks in the first folder, then the tracks in any folders nested inside the first folder, then move onto the second folder, and so on. For example, if folder 1 has folders 1a and 1b within it, and folder 2 contains folder 2a, the playing sequence will be folder 1, 1a, 1b, 2, 2a.

When the playback of a file is finished the playback of the other files in the same directory continues. Directory change takes place automatically when all files in the current directory have been played back.

## MP3 DISPLAY OPTIONS

When an MP3 disc is playing, certain information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The file name
- The folder name
- ID3 information which might be the album or artist's name.

The unit will normally show the file name that is playing. To select one of the other items of information, press the **INFO** button repeatedly until the required item is shown in the display.

# Compact Disc Player

---

**Note:** *If the ID3 information selected is unavailable, **NO MP3 TAG** will be shown in the display.*

## CD text display options

When an audio disc with CD text is playing, limited information encoded in each track can be displayed. Such information will normally include:

- The disc name
- The artist name
- The track name.

**Note:** *These display options are selected in the same way as MP3 displays. **NO DISC NAME** or **NO TRACK NAME** will be shown in the display if no information has been encoded.*

## ENDING COMPACT DISC PLAYBACK

To restore radio reception on all units:

- Press the RADIO button.

**Note:** *This will not eject the CD; the disc will merely pause at the point where radio reception was restored.*

To resume CD playback, press the CD button again.

## Auxiliary input jack

---

**Note:** *For optimum performance when using any auxiliary device set the volume on the device high. This will reduce audio interference when charging the device via the vehicle power supply socket.*

When fitted the Auxiliary input (AUX IN) socket permits an auxiliary device, such as an MP3 player, to be linked into the vehicle audio system. Output can be played through the vehicle speakers.

To connect an auxiliary device, plug it into the AUX IN socket using a 3.5 mm conventional audio jack connector.

Select the auxiliary input via the AUX or MENU button and playback will be heard through the vehicle speakers. LINE IN or LINE IN ACTIVE will appear in the vehicle audio unit display. Volume, treble and bass can be adjusted on the vehicle audio unit as normal.

The vehicle audio unit buttons can also be used to restore playback from the vehicle audio unit, while the auxiliary device remains connected.

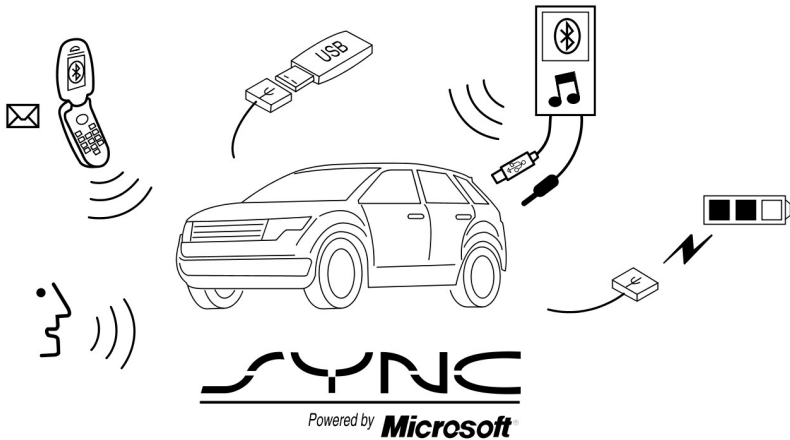
# Audio Troubleshooting

---

## AUDIO TROUBLESHOOTING

Audio unit display	Rectification
PLEASE CHECK CD	General error message for CD fault conditions, such as cannot read the CD, data-CD inserted, etc. Ensure disc is loaded correct way up. Clean and re-try, or replace disc with known music disc. If error persists contact your dealer.
CD DRIVE MALFUNCTION	General error message for CD fault conditions such as possible mechanism fault.
CD DRIVE HIGH TEMP	Ambient temperature too hot – unit will not work until it has cooled down.
IPOD ERROR READING DEVICE	General error message for iPod fault conditions, such as cannot read the data. Ensure iPod is inserted correctly. If error persists contact your dealer.

## GENERAL INFORMATION



E142598

SYNC is an in-vehicle communications system that works with your Bluetooth-enabled cell phone and portable media player.

This allows you to:

- Make and receive calls
- Access and play music from your media player
- Use Emergency Assistance
- Access phonebook contacts and music using voice commands
- Stream music from your connected cell phone
- Select pre-defined text messages

- Use the advanced voice recognition system
- Charge your USB device (if your device supports this).

Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC.

### Support

For further support, see an authorized dealer. For more information, visit the regional Ford website.

## Safety Information

### WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

When using SYNC:

- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and cables where you cannot step on them or they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. Refer to your device's manual for further information.
- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. See an authorized dealer.

## Privacy Information

When a cell phone is connected to SYNC, the system creates a profile that is linked to that cell phone. The system creates the profile to offer you more mobile features and to operate more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your phonebook, text messages (read and unread) and call history. This will include the history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. If you connect a media player, the system creates and retains an index of

supported media content. The system also records a short development log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cell phone profile, media player index and development log will remain in the system unless deleted. They are generally accessible in your vehicle only when you connect your cell phone or media player. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you complete a master reset to erase all stored information. See **Information Displays** (page 79).

Special equipment is required to access system data. Access to your vehicle's SYNC module is also required. We will not access the system data for any purpose other than as described without consent. Examples where system data can be accessed are for a court order, where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of us. Further privacy information is available. See **SYNC™ Applications and Services** (page 287).

## USING VOICE RECOGNITION

This system helps you control many features using voice commands. This allows you to keep your hands on the steering wheel and focus on what is around you.

### Helpful Hints

Make sure the interior of your vehicle is as quiet as possible. Wind noise from open windows and road vibrations may prevent the system from correctly recognizing spoken commands.

Before giving a voice command, wait for the system announcement to finish followed by a single beep. Any command spoken before this does not register with the system.

Speak naturally, without long pauses between words.

You can interrupt the system at any time while it is speaking by pressing the voice button. You can also cancel a voice session at any time by pressing and holding the voice button.

## Initiating a Voice Session



Press the voice button. A list of available commands appears in the display.

Command	Description
Bluetooth audio	Stream audio from your cell phone.
(cancel   stop   exit)	Cancel the requested action.
((line   AV   audio video) in   AUX   audio video)	Access the device connected to the auxiliary input jack.
(phone   Blackberry   iPhone   Mobile)	Make calls.
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	Access the device connected to your USB port.
voice settings	Adjust the level of voice interaction and feedback.
[main menu] help	Hear a list of voice commands available in the current mode.

## System Interaction and Feedback

The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and your chosen level of interaction. You can customize the voice recognition system to provide more or less instruction and feedback.

The default setting is to a higher level of interaction in order to help you learn to use the system. You can change these settings at any time.

## Adjusting the Interaction Level



Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the interaction level.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
interaction mode advanced	Provides less audible interaction and more tone prompts.
interaction mode novice	Provides more detailed interaction and guidance.

Confirmation prompts are short questions the system asks when it is not sure of your request or when there is more than one possible response to your request. For example, the system may ask if the command phone is correct.

Press the voice button. When prompted:

Command	Description
voice settings	Provides access to change the confirmation prompt setting.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description
confirmation prompts off	Makes a best guess from the command. You may still occasionally be asked to confirm settings.
confirmation prompts on	Clarifies your voice command with a short question.

The system creates suggestion lists when it has the same confidence level of several options based on your voice commands. When switched on, the system may prompt you with as many as four possibilities for clarification.

Command	Description
media candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the media suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
media candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for media suggestions.
phone candidate lists off	Makes a best guess from the cell phone suggestion list. The system may occasionally ask you questions.
phone candidate lists on	Clarifies your voice command for cell phone suggestions.

## Changing the Voice Settings

You can change the voice settings using

the information and entertainment display.

Press the **MENU** button.

Action	Message
1	SYNC-Settings
2	Voice settings

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR PHONE

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of SYNC. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Using privacy mode.
- Dialing a number.
- Redialing.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller ID.

Other features such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download are cell phone dependent features. To check your cell phone's compatibility, refer to your device's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

### Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button. When the audio display indicates that no phones are paired, select the option to add.
3. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your cell phone to start the pairing process.
4. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

Depending on your cell phone's capability and your market, the system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone (the cell phone the system automatically tries to connect with first when you switch the ignition on), downloading your phonebook, etc.

### Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones

Wirelessly pairing your cell phone with the system allows you to make and receive hands-free calls.

**Note:** You must switch the ignition and radio on.

**Note:** To scroll through the menus, press the up or down arrows on your audio system.

1. Make sure the Bluetooth feature on your cell phone is switched on before starting the search. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.
2. Press the **PHONE** button.
3. Select the option for Bluetooth devices.
4. Press the **OK** button.
5. Select the option to add. This starts the pairing process.
6. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for SYNC on your device to start the pairing process.
7. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.

The system may prompt you with questions such as setting the current cell phone as the primary cell phone, downloading your phonebook, etc.

## Cell Phone Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at home	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> at work	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> in office	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on cell	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
Call <name> on other	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
dial [[a] number]	You do not need to say "phone" prior to these commands.
([go to] privacy [on]   transfer to phone   handsfree off)	These commands are only available during a call.
(hold call [on]   (put   place) call on hold)	These commands are only available during a call.
(hold call off   take call off hold)	These commands are only available during a call.
mute [call] [on]	These commands are only available during a call.
(mute [call] off   Unmute [call])	These commands are only available during a call.
join (call   calls)	These commands are only available during a call.

## Phonebook Commands

When you ask the system to access a phonebook name, number, etc., the

requested information appears in the audio display.

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	To call the contact.
dial [[a] number]	112 (one-one-two), 700 (seven hundred) etc.
Pound	
Number	0 (zero) to 9 (nine)
Asterisk	
clear	Deletes all entered digits
(delete   correct)	Deletes the last set of entered digits.
Plus	
Star	

**Note:** To exit dial mode, press and hold the phone button or any button on the audio unit.

## Menu Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command
(turn ringer on   silent mode off)
(turn ringer off   silent mode [on])

Words in parenthesis are optional and do not have to be spoken for the system to understand the command.

## Making a Call

Press the voice button and when prompted say either:

Command	Action
call (someone   [[a] name])	
dial [[a] number]	Followed by a number. When the system confirms the number say: dial [[a] number]

To erase the last spoken digit say:

Command	Action
(delete   correct)	Or press the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To erase all spoken digits say:

Command	Action
clear	Or press and hold the left arrow button on the audio unit.

To end the call, press the end call button on the steering wheel or select the end call option in the audio display and press **OK**.

## Receiving a Call

When receiving a call, you can:

- Answer the call by pressing the accept call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the accept call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Reject the call by pressing the reject call button on the steering wheel or by selecting the reject call option in the audio display. Press the **OK** button.
- Ignore the call by doing nothing.

## Cell Phone Options During an Active Call

During an active call, you have extra menu features which become available, for example putting a call on hold.

To access this menu, choose one of the options available at the bottom of the audio display or select the option for more.

Message	Description and Action
Mic. off	Turn your vehicle's microphone off. To turn the microphone on, select the option again.
Privacy	Switch a call from an active hands-free environment to your cell phone for a more private conversation. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is private.
Hold	Put an active call on hold. When selected, the audio display will indicate the call is on hold.
Dial a number	Enter numbers using the audio system numeric keypad, for example numbers for passwords.
Join calls	Join two separate calls. The system supports a maximum of three callers on a multi-party or conference call. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Access the desired contact through the system or use voice commands to place the second call. Once actively in the second call, select the option for more.</li> <li>3. Scroll to the option to join calls and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> </ol>
Phonebook	Access your phonebook contacts. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Scroll to the option for phonebook and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>3. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Call history	Access your call history log. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option for more.</li> <li>2. Scroll to the option for call history appears and press the <b>OK</b> button.</li> <li>3. Scroll through your call history options (incoming, outgoing or missed).</li> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>5. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>

## Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu

You can access your call history, phonebook, sent text messages as well as access cell phone and system settings. You can also access advanced features such as emergency assistance.

The system attempts to automatically re-download your phonebook and call history each time your cell phone connects to the system. You must turn on the auto download feature if your cell phone supports it.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

1. Press the **PHONE** button to enter the cell phone menu.
2. Select one of the options available.

Message	Description and Action
Dial a number	Dial a number using the audio system numeric keypad.
Redial	Redial the last number called (if available). Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Phonebook	Access your downloaded phonebook. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to confirm and enter. You can use the options at the bottom of the screen to quickly access an alphabetical category. You can also use the letters on the keypad to jump in the list.</li> <li>2. Scroll through your phonebook contacts.</li> <li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button again when the desired selection appears in the audio display.</li> <li>4. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Call history	Access any previously dialed, received or missed calls. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.</li> <li>2. Scroll to select either incoming calls, outgoing calls or missed calls. Press the <b>OK</b> button to make your selection.</li> <li>3. Press the <b>OK</b> button or dial button to call the selection.</li> </ol>
Speed Dial	Select one of 10 speed dial entries. To set a speed dial entry, go to the phonebook and press and hold one of the numbers on the audio system numeric keypad.
Text messaging	Send, download and delete text messages.

Message	Description and Action
BT Devices	Access the option for Bluetooth device menu listings (add, connect, set as primary, on or off, delete).
Phone settings	View various settings and features on your cell phone.
Emergency Assistance	Turn the SYNC emergency assistance feature on or off.

## Text Messaging

The system allows you to receive, send, download and delete text messages. The system can also read incoming text messages to you so that you do not have to take your eyes off the road.

**Note:** *This is a cell phone dependent feature.*

### Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the audio display indicates you have a new message.

You have these options:

- Select the listen option to have the system read the message to you.
- Select the view option to open the text message. Select the ignore option or do nothing and the message goes into your text message inbox. Once selected, you have the ability to have the message read out to you, to view other messages or to select the more option.
- Press the voice button and say "Read text message".
- Select the more option and use the arrow buttons to scroll through further options.

**Note:** *Your cell phone must support downloading text messages using Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.*

Choose from the following:

Message	Action
Reply to sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to access and then scroll through the list of pre-defined messages to send.
Call sender	Press the <b>OK</b> button to call the sender of the message.
Forward msg.	Press the <b>OK</b> button to forward the message to anyone in your phonebook or call history. You can also choose to enter a number.

## Sending, Downloading and Deleting Your Text Messages

1. Press the **PHONE** button.

2. Select the text messaging option, then press the **OK** button.

Choose from the following:

Message	Description and Action
New	When you select the option to send a text message, a list of pre-defined messages appear in the audio display. Allows you to send a new text message based on a pre-defined set of 15 messages.
View	Allows you to read the full message and in addition provides the option to have the message read out to you by the system. To go to the next message select the more option. This allows you to reply to the sender, call the sender or forward the message.
Delete	Allows you to delete current text messages from the system (not your cell phone). The audio display indicates when all your text messages have been deleted.
More...	Allows you to delete all messages or to manually trigger a download of all unread messages from your cell phone.

## **Sending a Text Message**

1. Select the send option when the desired selection is highlighted in the audio display.
2. Select the confirmation option when the contact appears and press the **OK** button again to confirm when the system asks if you would like to send the message. Each text message is sent with a pre-defined signature.

**Note:** *You can send text messages either by choosing a contact from the phonebook and selecting the text option from the audio display or by replying to a received message in the inbox.*

**Note:** *Only one recipient is allowed per text message.*

## **Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings**

These are cell phone dependent features. Your cell phone settings allow you to access and adjust features such as your ringtone, text message notification, modify your phonebook and set up automatic download.

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the phone settings option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Set as master	If this option is checked, the system will use this cell phone as the master when there is more than one cell phone paired to the system. This option can be changed for all paired cell phones (not only for the active one) using the Bluetooth devices menu.
Phone status	See the cell phone name, provider name, cell phone number, signal level and battery level. When done, press the left arrow button to return to the cell phone status menu.
Set ringtone	Select which ringtone sounds during an incoming call (one of the system's or your cell phone's). If your cell phone supports in-band ringing, your cell phone's ringtone sounds when you choose the cell phone ringtone option. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll to hear each ringtone.</li> <li>2. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.</li> </ol>
Text msg notify	Have the option of hearing an audible tone to notify you when a text message arrives. Press the <b>OK</b> button to turn the audible tone on or off.
Phonebook pref.	Modify the contents of your phonebook, e.g. add, delete, download. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and scroll between:

Choose from the following:

Message	Description and Action
Add contacts	Push the desired contacts on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual on how to push contacts. Press the <b>OK</b> button to add more contacts from your phonebook.
Delete	When a message asking you to delete appears, select the option to confirm. Press the <b>OK</b> button to delete the current phonebook and call history. The system takes you back to the menu for phone settings.
Download now	Press the <b>OK</b> button to select and download your phonebook to the system.
Auto-download	When automatic download is switched on, any changes, additions or deletions saved in the system since your last download are deleted.

Message	Description and Action
	<p>When automatic download is switched off, your phonebook will not be downloaded when your cell phone connects to the system.</p> <p>Your phonebook, call history and text messages can only be accessed when your paired cell phone is connected to the system.</p> <p>Check or uncheck this option to automatically download your phonebook each time your cell phone connects to the system.</p> <p>Downloading times are cell phone dependent and quantity dependent.</p>

## Bluetooth Devices

This menu provides access to your Bluetooth devices. Use the arrow buttons to scroll through the menu options. It allows you to add, connect and delete devices and set a cell phone as primary.

## Bluetooth Devices Menu Options

1. Press the **PHONE** button.
2. Scroll until the Bluetooth device option appears, then press the **OK** button.
3. Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Add	<p>Pair additional cell phones to the system.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the option to add to start the pairing process.</li> <li>2. When a message to begin pairing appears in the audio display, search for <b>SYNC</b> on your cell phone. Refer to your device's manual if necessary.</li> <li>3. When prompted on your cell phone's display, enter the six-digit PIN provided by the system in the audio display. The display indicates when the pairing is successful.</li> </ol>

Message	Description and Action
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the option to set the cell phone as the primary cell phone appears, select either yes or no.</li> <li>Depending on the functionality of your cell phone, you may be asked extra questions (for example, if you would like to download your phonebook). Select either yes or no to confirm your response.</li> </ol>
Delete	After deleting a cell phone from the list, the cell phone can only be connected again by repeating the full pairing process. Select the delete option and confirm when the system asks to delete the selected device.
Master	The system attempts to connect with the primary cell phone every time you switch the ignition on. When a cell phone is selected as primary, it appears first in the list and is marked with an asterisk. Set a previously paired cell phone as your primary cell phone. Select the master option to confirm the primary cell phone.
Conn.	Connect a previously paired cell phone. You can only have one cell phone connected at a time to use the cell phone functionality. When another cell phone is connected, the previous cell phone will be disconnected from the telephone services. The system allows you to use different Bluetooth devices for the cell phone functionality and the Bluetooth audio music playback feature at the same time.
Discon.	Disconnects the selected cell phone. Select this option and confirm when asked to. After disconnecting a cell phone, it can be connected again without repeating the full pairing process.

## System Settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.

- Select the SYNC settings option, then press the **OK** button.
- Scroll to select from the following options:

Message	Description and Action
Bluetooth on	Check or uncheck this option to turn the Bluetooth interface of the system on or off. Select this option then press the <b>OK</b> button to change the option's status.
Set defaults	This selection does not erase your indexed information (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices).

Message	Description and Action
	Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. Return to the factory default settings.
Master reset	Completely erase all information stored on the system (phonebook, call history, text messages and paired devices) and return to the factory default settings. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. The display indicates when complete and the system takes you back to the previous menu.
Install on SYNC	Install applications or software updates you have downloaded. Select this option and confirm when prompted in the audio display. There must be a valid SYNC application or update available on the USB thumb drive in order to finish an installation successfully.
System info	Display the system's version numbers as well as its serial number. Press the <b>OK</b> button to select.
Voice settings	The voice settings submenu contains various options. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 273).
Browse USB	Browse the actual menu structure of the connected USB device. Press the <b>OK</b> button and use the up or down arrows to scroll through the folders and files. Use the left or right arrows to enter and leave a folder. Media content can be directly selected for playback from this menu.
Emergency Assistance	You can turn the emergency assistance feature on or off. See <b>SYNC™ Applications and Services</b> (page 287).

## SYNC™ APPLICATIONS AND SERVICES

A list of available applications appears. Each application may have its own specific settings.

Press the **MENU** button to enter the system menu.

**Note:** Some versions of SYNC may operate differently. Press the **PHONE** button instead of the **MENU** button to access the *Emergency Assistance* menu.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press <b>OK</b> .

## SYNC Emergency Assistance

### WARNINGS



For this feature to work, your cell phone must have Bluetooth and be compatible with the system.



Always place your cell phone in a secure location inside your vehicle. Failure to do so may cause serious

injury to someone or damage the cell phone which could prevent this feature from working correctly.



Unless the feature setting is switched on prior to a crash, the system will not attempt to place an emergency call which could delay the response time, potentially increasing the risk of serious injury or death. Do not wait for the system to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.

If a crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off, the system may contact emergency services by dialing 112 (the wireless emergency number that works in most European countries) through a paired and connected cell phone. For more information about the system and Emergency Assistance, visit the regional Ford website.

**Note:** Before selecting this feature, you must read the Emergency Assistance privacy notice later in this section for important information.

**Note:** When you switch this feature on or off, that setting applies for all paired cell phones. If you have turned this feature off and a previously paired phone connects when you switch on the ignition, either a voice message plays, a display message or icon is shown or both.

**Note:** Every cell phone operates differently. While this feature works with most cell phones, some cell phones may experience difficulties using this feature.

**Note:** Make sure you are familiar with the information about airbag deployment. See **Occupant protection** (page 25).

### Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Action
SYNC-Apps	Press <b>OK</b> .
Emergency Assistance	Press <b>OK</b> . Select the option you require and press <b>OK</b> .

### Display Options

If you switch on this feature, a confirmation message appears in the display.

If you switch off this feature, a dialog will appear in the display, which allows you to set a voice reminder.

Off with voice reminder provides a display and voice reminder when your cell phone connects and your vehicle starts.

Off without voice reminder provides a display reminder only without a voice reminder when your cell phone connects.

To make sure that Emergency Assistance works correctly:

- The system must have power and be working correctly at the time of the crash and during feature activation and use.
- You must switch on the feature before a crash.
- You must have a cell phone connected to the system.
- In certain countries, it may be necessary to have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in order to place and maintain an emergency call.
- A connected cell phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the crash.
- A connected cell phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- Your vehicle must have battery power.

**Note:** *This feature only works in a European country or region where SYNC Emergency Assistance can call the local emergency services. Visit the regional Ford website for details.*

## In the Event of a Crash

**Note:** *Not every crash deploys an airbag or triggers the fuel pump shut off (which may turn on Emergency Assistance). However, if Emergency Assistance is triggered the system tries to contact the emergency services. If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses connection to the system, it searches for and tries to connect to any available previously paired cell phone. The system attempts to dial 112.*

Before making a call:

- If you do not cancel the call and SYNC makes a successful call, an introductory message plays for the emergency operator. After this message, there is hands-free communication between your vehicle's occupants and the operator.
- The system provides a short window of time (approximately 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you do not cancel the call, the system attempts to dial 112.
- The system plays a message letting you know when it attempts to make an emergency call. You can cancel the call by selecting the relevant function button or by pressing the end call button on the steering wheel.

During a call:

- Emergency Assistance uses your vehicle GPS or cellular network information when available to determine the most appropriate language to use. It alerts the emergency operator of the crash and delivers the introductory message. This may include your vehicle GPS coordinates.
- The language the system uses to interact with the occupants of your vehicle may differ from the language used to deliver information to the emergency operator.
- After the delivery of the introductory message the voice line opens so that you can speak hands-free with the emergency operator.
- When the line is connected, you must be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location information immediately.

**Note:** While the system provides information to the emergency operator, the system plays a message letting you know it is sending important information. It then lets you know when the line is open to start hands-free communication.

**Note:** During an Emergency Assistance call, an emergency priority screen appears which contains vehicle GPS coordinates when available.

**Note:** It is possible that GPS location information is not available at the time of the crash; in this case, Emergency Assistance will still attempt to place an emergency call.

**Note:** It is possible that the emergency services will not receive the GPS coordinates; in this case, hands-free communication with an emergency operator is available.

**Note:** The emergency operator may also receive information from the cellular network such as cell phone number, cell phone location and cell phone carrier name independent from SYNC Emergency Assistance.

Emergency Assistance may not work if:

- Your cell phone or Emergency Assistance hardware sustains damage in the crash.
- The vehicle battery or the system has no power.
- A crash ejects your cell phone from your vehicle.
- You do not have a valid and registered SIM card with credit in your cell phone.
- You are in a European country or region where the SYNC Emergency Assistance cannot place the call. Visit the regional Ford website for details.

## Important Information about the Emergency Assistance Feature

Emergency Assistance does not currently call emergency services in the following markets: Albania, Belarus, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Macedonia, Netherlands, Ukraine, Moldova and Russia.

Visit the regional Ford website for latest details.

## Emergency Assistance Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assistance, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut off. This feature has the capability to disclose your location information to the emergency operator or other details about your vehicle or crash to provide the most appropriate emergency services.

If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch on the feature.

## SYNC AppLink

The system enables voice and manual control of SYNC AppLink enabled smartphone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and manual controls.

**Note:** You must pair and connect your smartphone to SYNC to access AppLink.

**Note:** iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

**Note:** Android users need to connect the phone to SYNC using Bluetooth.

**Note:** For information on available apps, supported smartphone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the Ford website.

**Note:** Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

## To Access Using the SYNC Menu

Scroll through the list of available applications and press **OK** to select an app. Once an app is running through SYNC, press the right arrow button to access the app menu. You can access various app features from here, for example thumbs up and thumbs down. Press the left arrow button to exit the app menu.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	Scroll to this option, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Find new Apps	Select this option if the app required is not listed.

**Note:** If a SYNC AppLink compatible app cannot be found, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

## To Access Using Voice Commands

Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
mobile (apps   applications)	Say the name of the application after the tone. The application will start. While an app is running through SYNC, you can press the voice button and speak commands specific to the app.

The following voice commands are always available:

Command	Description and Action
[main menu] help	Use this command to hear a list of available voice commands.
mobile (apps   applications)	The system will prompt you to say the name of the app to start it.
list [mobile] (apps   applications)	The system will list all of the currently available mobile apps.

Command	Description and Action
find [new] [mobile] (apps   applications)	The system will search your connected mobile device for SYNC compatible apps.
<the name of the app>	Say the name of an app to start it on SYNC.
<the name of the app> Help	The system will list the available voice commands for the requested app.
(quit   exit   close)	Use this command followed by the name of the app.

Press the **MENU** button then select:

## Enabling and Disabling Push Notifications

Some apps can send push notifications. A push notification is an alert from an app running in the background and is delivered by voice, pop up or both. This may be particularly useful for news or location based apps.

Message	Description and Action
SYNC-Apps	
Mobile Apps	
Settings	
All Apps	If push notifications are supported this setting will be listed. Select to enable or disable the feature as required.

## Enabling SYNC Mobile Apps

To use the system you must consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates, using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Data is sent to Ford in the United States through the connected device. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

**Note:** You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.

**Note:** Standard data rates will apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

## App Status

You can view the current status of an app

in the settings menu. There are three possible statuses:

Message	Description and Action
Update needed	The system has detected a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.
Up-to-date	No update is required.
Updating...	The system is trying to receive an update.

Options in the settings menu:

Message	Description and Action
Request Update	If an update is required and you want to manually request the update, for example when you are in a Wi-Fi hotspot.
Disable Updates	Select this option to disable automatic updates.

## App Permissions

Permissions are divided by groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu.

When you launch an app using SYNC, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example:

- To allow your vehicle to provide vehicle information to the app including, but not limited to: Fuel level, fuel consumption, engine speed, battery voltage, odometer, VIN, external temperature, gear position, tire pressure, ambient temperature, date and time.
- To allow your vehicle to provide driving characteristic information, including, but not limited to: MyKey, seat belt status, engine speeds, braking events, brake pedal switch, acceleration, accelerator pedal position, clutch pedal switch, trip length, trip time, trip cost, percent engine on time, and percent of time at speed.

- To allow your vehicle to provide location information, including: GPS and speed.
- To allow the app to send push notifications using the vehicle display and voice capabilities while running in a background state.

**Note:** You will only need to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC.

**Note:** We are not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve us to provide to an app.

## USING SYNC™ WITH YOUR MEDIA PLAYER

You can access and play music from your media player through your vehicle's speaker system using the system's media menu or voice commands. You can also sort and play your music by specific categories such as artist or albums.

Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands. Refer to the media voice commands.

### To Connect Using the System Menu

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	Depending on how many media files are on your connected device, an indexing message may appear in the display. When indexing is complete, the screen returns to the playback menu.

Choose from the following:

SYNC is capable of hosting nearly any media player including: iPod, Zune, Plays from device players, and most USB drives. SYNC also supports audio formats such as MP3, WMA, WAV and ACC.

### Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port

**Note:** If your media player has a power switch, make sure you switch on the device.

### To Connect Using Voice Commands

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB port.
2. Press the voice button and when prompted say:

2. Press the **AUX** button until an initializing message appears in the display.

Message
Play all
Playlists
Songs
Artists
Albums
Genres
Browse USB
Reset USB
Exit

## What's Playing?

At any time during playback, you can press the voice button and ask the system what is playing. The system reads the metadata tags (if populated) of the current track.

## Media Voice Commands



Press the voice button and when prompted say:

Command	Description and Action
(USB [stick]   iPod   MP3 [player])	You can now play music by saying any of the appropriate voice commands.

Then any of the following:

Command	Description and Action
play	
pause	
play [album] [by [artist]]	<name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song. Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.
play all	

Command	Description and Action
play [artist]	<name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song. Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.
play [genre]	<name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song. Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.
[play] next track	
play [playlist]	<name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song. Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.
[play] previous track	
play [song   track   title   file]	<name> is a dynamic listing, meaning that it could be the name of anything such as desired group, artist or song. Voice commands that are not available until indexing is complete.
repeat off	
repeat one [on]	
(browse   search   show) album	
(browse   search   show) artist	
(browse   search   show) genre	
(browse   search   show) playlist	
(browse   search   show) all (album   albums)	
(browse   search   show) all (artist   artists)	
(browse   search   show) all (genre   genres)	
(browse   search   show) all (playlist   playlists)	

Command	Description and Action
(browse   search   show) all (song   songs   title   titles   file   files   track   tracks)	
shuffle off	
shuffle [all] [on]	
[play] (similar music   more like this)	
((who's   who is) this   who plays this   (what's   what is) playing [now]   (what   which) (song   track   artist) is this   (who's   who is) playing   (what's   what is) this)	

## Voice Command Guide

Command	Description and Action
(browse   search   show) genre	The system searches all the data from your indexed music and if available, begins to play the chosen type of music.
[play] (similar music   more like this)	The system compiles a playlist and then plays similar music to what is currently playing from the USB port using indexed metadata information.
(browse   search   show) artist	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.
(browse   search   show) album	The system searches for a specific artist, track or album from the music indexed through the USB port.

The system is also capable of playing music from your cell phone through Bluetooth.

To switch the Bluetooth audio on, use the **AUX** or **Source** button or press the voice button and when prompted and say:

Command	Description and Action
Bluetooth audio	

Then any of the following:

Command	Description and Action
pause	
play	
[play] next track	
[play] previous track	

Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

## Media Menu Features

The media menu allows you to select how to play your music (such as by artist, genre, shuffle or repeat) and to find similar music or reset the index of your USB devices.

Message	Description and Action
Options	This will enter the media menu.

Then any of the following:

Message	Description and Action
Shuffle	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Repeat track	Choose to shuffle or repeat your music. Once you make your choice, it remains on until you switch it off.
Similar music	You can play similar types of music to the current playlist from the USB port. The system uses the metadata information of each track to compile a playlist. The system then creates a new list of similar tracks and then begins playing. Each track must have the metadata tags populated for this feature. With certain playing devices, if your metadata tags are not populated, the tracks will not be available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. However, if you place these tracks onto your playing device in mass storage device mode they are available in voice recognition, the play menu or this option. The system places unknowns into any unpopulated metadata tag.
Reset SYNC USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

## Accessing Your USB Song Library

1. Plug the device into your vehicle's USB

port.

2. Press **AUX** to select USB playback.

Message	Description and Action
Browse USB	This menu allows you to select and play your media files by artist, album, genre, playlist and track or even to browse what is on your USB device.

If there are no media files to access, the display indicates there is no media. If there are media files, you have the following options to scroll through and select:

Message	Description and Action
Play all	Play all indexed media files from your playing device one at a time in numerical order.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. The first track title appears in the display.
Playlists	Access your playlists (from formats such as ASX, M3U, WPL or MTP).* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired playlist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Songs	Search for and play a specific indexed track.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired track, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Artists	Sort all indexed media files by artist. Once selected, the system lists and then plays all artists and tracks alphabetically.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired artist, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Albums	Sort all indexed media files by albums.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired albums, and then press <b>OK</b> .

Message	Description and Action
Genres	Sort indexed music by genre (category) type.* 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to select the desired genre, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Browse USB	Browse all supported media files on your media player connected to the USB port. You can only view media files that are compatible with SYNC; other saved files are not visible. 1. Press <b>OK</b> to select. 2. Scroll to browse indexed media files on your flash drive, and then press <b>OK</b> .
Reset USB	Resets the USB index. After the new indexing is complete, you can choose what to play from the USB song library.

\* You can use the buttons at the bottom of the audio display to jump to a certain alphabetical category quickly. You can also use the letters on the numeric keypad to jump in the list.

## Bluetooth Devices and System Settings

You can access these menus using the audio display. See **Using SYNC™ With Your Phone** (page 276).

## SYNC™ TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the regional Ford website.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
A lot of back-ground noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC is not set to off.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
The system says "Phonebook downloaded" but my SYNC phonebook is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Try pushing your phonebook contacts to SYNC by selecting the option to add.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, try moving them to your cell phone's memory.
		Remove any pictures or special ring tones associated with the missing contact.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch off the auto download setting.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.

Cell phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching off your cell phone, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	<p>Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.</p> <p>Access the text messaging menu of SYNC to see if your cell phone supports the feature. Press the <b>PHONE</b> button and then scroll and select the option for text messaging, then press <b>OK</b>.</p>
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Try switching off the device, resetting it or removing the battery, then trying again.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure correctly insert the USB cable to the device and your vehicle's USB port.
		Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.
SYNC does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC and press play on your device.

USB and media issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
When I connect my iPhone or iPod Touch through the USB and Bluetooth Audio at the same time, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	From the iPhone or iPod Touch music now playing screen, select the audio device airplay icon at the very bottom of your iPhone or iPod Touch screen.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through Bluetooth Audio, select SYNC.
		To listen to the iPhone or iPod Touch through USB, select Dock Connector.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
		Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	The microphone for the system is either in your rear view mirror or in the headliner just above the windshield.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Say the song or artist exactly as the system saved it. If you say, "Play Artist Prince", the system does not play music by Prince and the Revolution or Prince and the New Power Generation.
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
	The system may not be reading the name the same way you are saying it.	If the song titles are in capital letters, you have to spell them. LOLA requires you to say "L-O-L-A".
		Do not use special characters in the title, as the system does not recognize them.
SYNC does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands at the beginning of the cell phone section.
		You can also use the cell phone and media suggestion lists to get a list of possible suggestions when the system cannot fully understand you. See <b>Using Voice Recognition</b> (page 273).
	You may not be saying the name exactly as the system saved it.	Make sure you are saying the name exactly as the system saved it. For example, if the contact name is Joe Wilson, say "Call Joe Wilson".
		The system works better if you list full names such as "Joe Wilson" rather than "Joe".
	Contacts in your phone-book may be very short and similar or they may contain special characters.	Do not use special characters such as 123 or ICE as the system does not recognize them.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
	Your phonebook contacts may be in capital letters.	If the contacts are in capital letters, you have to spell them. JAKE requires you to say "Call J-A-K-E".
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		<b>Helpful Hint:</b> You can select your contact manually. Press <b>PHONE</b> . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.
The SYNC voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.	You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC.	SYNC applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.


Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.	SYNC uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.	SYNC uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").
My previous Bluetooth voice control system allowed me to control the radio, CD, and climate control systems. Why can I not control these systems with SYNC?	The focus of SYNC is to control your mobile devices and the content stored on them.	SYNC offers significant capability beyond the previous system such as dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC only supports four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC remains in the current active language.
		SYNC offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, play artist Madonna).





## Appendices

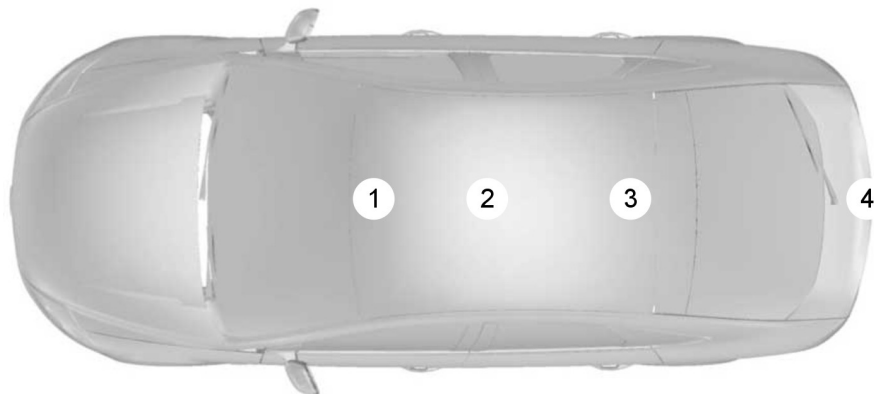
### ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

#### WARNINGS

 Your vehicle has been tested and certified to legislations relating to electromagnetic compatibility (72/245/EEC, UN ECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislations. Have any equipment fitted by properly trained technicians.

#### WARNINGS

-  The RF (radio frequency) transmitter equipment (e.g. cellular telephones, amateur radio transmitters etc.) may only be fitted to your vehicle if they comply with the parameters shown in the table below. There are no special provisions or conditions for installations or use.
-  Do not mount any transceiver, microphones, speakers, or any other item in the deployment path of the airbag system.
-  Do not fasten antenna cables to original vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.
-  Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 centimeters (4 inches) from any electronic modules and airbags.



E85998

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1 – 30	50 W	3, 4
30 – 54	50 W	1, 2, 3
68 – 87.5	50 W	1, 2, 3

# Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
142 – 176	50 W	1, 2, 3
380 – 512	50 W	1, 2, 3
806 – 940	10 W	1, 2, 3
1200 – 1400	10 W	1, 2, 3
1710 – 1885	10 W	1, 2, 3
1885 – 2025	10 W	1, 2, 3

**Note:** After the installation of RF transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in the vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- with the ignition **ON**
- with the engine running
- during a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside the vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

### SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA)

- You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation ("MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials,

and "online" or electronic documentation ("MS SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The MS SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

- The MS SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY. The additional software and systems of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("FORD SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The FORD SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

# Appendices

- The MS SOFTWARE and/or FORD SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by third party software and service suppliers. The additional software and services of third party origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The MS SOFTWARE, FORD SOFTWARE and THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE hereinafter collectively and individually will be referred to as "SOFTWARE".

**IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).**

**GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE:** This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICE and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

## Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.
- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICE and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

---

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Security Updates/Digital Rights Management:** Content owners use the WMDRM technology included in your DEVICE to protect their intellectual property, included copyrighted content. Portions of the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE use WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the SOFTWARE's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. This action does not affect unprotected content. When your DEVICE downloads licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade the SOFTWARE on your DEVICE to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade.
- **Consent to Use of Data:** You agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may collect and use technical information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may use this information solely to improve their products or to provide customized services or technologies to you. MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICE.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates,

# Appendices

---

supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.

If MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The MS SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites through the use of the SOFTWARE. The third party sites are not under the control of MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent. Neither MS nor Microsoft Corporation nor their affiliates nor their designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and/or their designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICE operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and assumes any risk associated with the use of the DEVICE.

## **UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:**

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICE on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## Appendices

---

### **INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:**

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service providers, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

**EXPORT RESTRICTIONS:** You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>.

**TRADEMARKS:** This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, MS, Microsoft Corporation, third party software or service providers, their affiliates or suppliers.

**PRODUCT SUPPORT:** Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

**No Liability for Certain Damages:** EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS, MICROSOFT CORPORATION AND/OR THEIR AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

- THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY EXPRESSLY BE PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

# Appendices

## Adobe

Contains Adobe® [Flash® Player] or [AIR®] technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This [Licensee Product] contains [Adobe® Flash® Player] [Adobe® AIR®] software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated, Copyright ©1995-2009 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash and AIR are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

## End User Notice

### **Microsoft® Windows® Mobile for Automotive Important Safety Information**

This system Ford SYNC™ contains software that is licensed to Manufacturer FORD MOTOR COMPANY by an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation pursuant to a license agreement. Any removal, reproduction, reverse engineering or other unauthorized use of the software from this system in violation of the license agreement is strictly prohibited and may subject you to legal action.

**Read and follow instructions:** Before using your Windows Automotive- based system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("User's Guide"). Not following precautions found in this User's Guide can lead to an accident or other serious consequences.

**Keep User's Guide in vehicle:** When kept in the vehicle, the User's Guide will be a ready reference for you and other users unfamiliar with the Windows Automotive-based system. Please make certain that before using the system for the first time, all persons have access to the User's Guide and read its instructions and safety information carefully.

## WARNING



Operating certain parts of this system while driving can distract your attention away from the road, and possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

## General Operation

**Voice Command Control:** Functions within the Windows Automotive-based system may be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel.

**Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

# Appendices

---

## **Use of Speech Recognition Functions:**

Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors.

**Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

**Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious consequences. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

**Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.

**Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.

**Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

## **TeleNav Software End User License Agreement**

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software.

TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

### **1. Safe and Lawful Use**

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software: (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely; (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver,

places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions; (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked; (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement; (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

## **2. Account Information**

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

## **3. Software License**

Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon

any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

### **3.1 License Limitations**

You agree not to do any of the following: (a) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; (b) attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; (c) remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; (d) distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or (e) use the TeleNav Software in any manner that (i) infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party, (ii) violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or (iii) is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

# Appendices

---

## 4. Disclaimers

To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

TELENNAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE. Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

## 5. Limitation of Liability

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENNAV AND OF ALL OF TELENNAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

## 6. Arbitration and Governing Law

You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the

# Appendices

---

Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial.

This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of laws provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

## 7. Assignment

You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

## 8. Miscellaneous

### 8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

### 8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement

### 8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

### 8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

## 8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect

## 8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

## 9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

The TeleNav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to TeleNav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the TeleNav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to TeleNav's third party vendor licensors:

### **NavTeq End User License Agreement**

#### **END USER TERMS**

The content provided ("Data") is licensed, not sold. By opening this package, or installing, copying, or otherwise using the Data, you agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. If you do not agree to the terms of this agreement, you are not permitted to install, copy, use, resell or transfer the Data. If you wish to reject the terms of this agreement, and have not

installed, copied, or used the Data, you must contact your retailer or NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") within thirty (30) days of purchase for a refund of your purchase price. To contact NT, please visit [www.navteq.com](http://www.navteq.com).

The Data is provided for your personal, internal use only and may not be resold. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAVTEQ North America, LLC ("NT") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®.

NT holds a nonexclusive license from the United States Postal Service ® to publish and sell ZIP+4 ® information.

© United States Postal Service ® 2009. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service ® The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain Data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

#### **TERMS AND CONDITIONS**

**License Limitations on Use:** You agree that your license to use this Data is limited to and conditioned on use for solely personal, noncommercial purposes, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise

# Appendices

reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

**License Limitations on Transfer:** Your limited license does not allow transfer or resale of the Data, except on the condition that you may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if: (a) you retain no copies of the Data; (b) the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement; and (c) you transfer the Data in the exact same form as you purchased it by physically transferring the original media (e.g., the CD-ROM or DVD you purchased), all original packaging, all Manuals and other documentation. Specifically, Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

**Additional License Limitations:** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NT in a separate written agreement, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, your license is conditioned on use of the Data as prescribed in this agreement, and you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

## WARNING



This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic Data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

**No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you "as is", and you agree to use it at your own risk. NT and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

**Disclaimer of Warranty:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

**Disclaimer of Liability:** NT AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS

## Appendices

---

OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NT OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

**Export Control:** You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit NT from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

**Entire Agreement:** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NT (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

**Severability:** You and NT agree that if any portion of this agreement is found illegal or unenforceable, that portion shall be severed and the remainder of the Agreement shall be given full force and effect.

**Governing Law:** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the personal jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

**Government End Users:** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial term" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use", and be treated in accordance with such Notice:

### NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

NAME:

### NAVTEQ

CONTRACTOR  
(MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

**425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL  
60606.**

# Appendices

---

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101

and is subject to the End User License Agreement under

which this Data was provided.

© 2011 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify NAVTEQ prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Wi-Fi hotspot data provided by JiWire, © 2013 JiWire.

## **Gracenote® Copyright**

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright© 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents #5,987,525, #6,061,680, #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

## **Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)**

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device.

This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote

## Appendices

---

become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com) for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL

WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER.

© Gracenote 2007.

FCC ID: KMHSYNCG2

IC: 1422A-SYNCG2

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

# Appendices

## TYPE APPROVALS

### FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC ID: WJLRX-42

IC: 7847A-RX42

Changes or modifications to your device not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance can void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

### RX-42 - declaration of conformity

We, the party responsible for compliance, declare under our sole responsibility that the Handset Integration product RX-42 is in conformity with the provisions of the following Council Directive: 1999/5/EC. A copy of the Declaration of Conformity can be found at:

[www.novero.com/declaration\\_of\\_conformity](http://www.novero.com/declaration_of_conformity)

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## TYPE APPROVALS

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc.

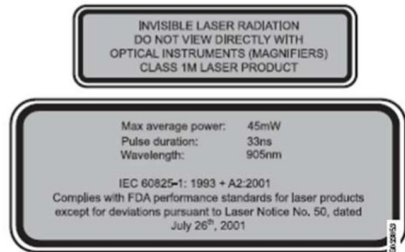
## TYPE APPROVALS



SD Logo is a trademark.

## TYPE APPROVALS

### Laser sensor



### WARNINGS



Invisible laser radiation. Do not view directly with optical instruments (magnifiers). Class 1M laser product.



IEC 60825-1: 1993 + A2:2001.  
Complies with FDA performance standards for laser products except for deviation pursuant to Laser Notice No. 50, dated July 26<sup>th</sup>, 2001.

# Appendices

Item	Specification
Max average power	45mW
Pulse duration	33ns
Wavelength	905nm

## TYPE APPROVALS

### EU Declaration

Hereby, Valeo declares that this short range device is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

### Certificate for United Arab Emirates



E125209

ER-GEN-00-0002-24

## TYPE APPROVALS

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the FreeType team © 2006

## TYPE APPROVALS

The navigation software is based in part on the work of the independent JPEG Group.



# Index

## A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	98
About This Manual.....	7
Protecting the Environment.....	7
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	138
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	138
ACC	
See: Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....	155
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	9
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	157
Active City Stop.....	167
Principle of Operation.....	167
Active Park Assist.....	150
Principle of Operation.....	150
Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....	155
Principle of Operation.....	155
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)	
See: Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	157
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	55
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	41
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	98
Air Vents.....	98
Center air vents.....	98
Side air vent.....	99
Alarm.....	39
Principle of Operation.....	39
Alternative frequencies.....	265
Ambient Lighting.....	54
Type 1.....	55
Type 2.....	55
Appendices.....	308
Arming the alarm.....	40
At a Glance.....	11
Front exterior overview.....	11
Instrument panel overview.....	13
Rear exterior overview.....	16
Vehicle interior overview.....	12
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	77
Automatic Transmission.....	77
Door Open.....	78
Frost.....	77
Key Outside Car.....	78
Lights On.....	78
Low Fuel.....	78
Safety Belt Reminder.....	78
Switching the Chimes On and Off.....	77
Audio Control.....	41
Type 1.....	41
Type 2.....	42
Audio Input Jack.....	117
Audio introduction.....	252
Audio System Security.....	261
Audio troubleshooting.....	271
Audio Troubleshooting.....	271
Audio unit menus.....	265
Audio unit operation.....	262
Audio unit overview .....	253
Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	69
Autolamps.....	49
Automatic Climate Control.....	101
Mono Mode.....	103
Switching Mono Mode Back On.....	103
Switching Mono Mode Off.....	103
Temperature Control.....	102
Automatic High Beam Control.....	50
Manually Overriding the System.....	51
Setting the System Sensitivity.....	51
Switching the System On.....	50
Automatic Transmission.....	135
Emergency park position release lever.....	137
Hints on driving with an automatic transmission.....	136
Selector lever positions.....	135
Sport mode and manual shifting.....	136
Automatic volume control.....	265
Auto-Start-Stop.....	126
Principle of Operation.....	126
Autostore control.....	263
Autowipers.....	43

# Index

Auxiliary Heater.....	103
Diesel auxiliary heater (depending on country).....	106
Fuel operated heater (depending on country).....	105
Parking heater.....	103
Auxiliary input jack.....	270
Auxiliary Power Points.....	116

## B

Battery connection points.....	218
Belt Minder.....	27
Deactivating the safety belt minder.....	28
Rear safety belt minder.....	28
Blind Spot Information System.....	69
Blind spot information system (BLIS).....	69
Detection errors.....	70
System detection and alerts.....	70
Turning the system on and off.....	70
Using the system.....	69
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	198
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	210
Brakes.....	138
Principle of Operation.....	138
Breaking-In.....	184
Brakes and clutch.....	184
Engine.....	184
Tires.....	184
Bulb changing	
See: Changing a Bulb.....	56
Bulb Specification Chart.....	63

## C

Capacities and Specifications.....	238
Technical Specifications.....	238
Cargo Nets.....	171
Cargo net.....	172
Luggage retention net.....	171
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	215
Catalytic Converter.....	130
Driving with a catalytic converter.....	130

Changing a Bulb.....	56
Approach lamp.....	59
Central high mounted brake lamp.....	62
Front fog lamps.....	59
Headlamp.....	56
Interior lamps.....	63
License plate lamp.....	63
Luggage compartment lamp, footwell lamp and tailgate lamp.....	63
Rear lamps - 4 door.....	61
Rear lamps - 5 door.....	60
Side repeater.....	58
Changing a Fuse.....	195
Changing a Road Wheel.....	225
Assembling the Wheel Brace.....	228
Installing a Road Wheel.....	230
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	227
Locking Lug Nuts.....	225
Removing a Road Wheel.....	230
Removing the Wheel Trim.....	229
Vehicle Jack.....	227
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel.....	225
Changing the 12V Battery.....	218
Changing the remote control battery.....	30
Remote control with a folding key blade.....	30
Remote control without a folding key blade.....	31
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	45
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	45
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	45
Child Safety.....	18
Child Safety Locks.....	23
Electric child safety locks.....	23
Manual child safety locks.....	23
Child Seat Positioning.....	19
Child Seats.....	18
Child restraints for different mass groups.....	18
Cigar Lighter.....	116
Cleaning the Exterior.....	215
Body paintwork preservation.....	216
Cleaning the alloy wheels.....	215
Cleaning the chrome trim.....	215
Cleaning the headlamps.....	215
Cleaning the rear window.....	215

# Index

Cleaning the Interior.....	216
Instrument cluster screens, LCD screens, radio screens.....	216
Rear windows.....	216
Safety belts.....	216
Climate Control.....	98
Principle of Operation.....	98
Clock.....	116
Cold Weather Precautions.....	184
Compact disc playback.....	267
Compact Disc Player.....	267
Compact disc track scanning.....	268
Type 1.....	268
Type 2 and 3.....	268
Convenience features.....	116
Coolant Check	
See: Engine Coolant Check.....	210
Cornering Lamps.....	53
Cruise Control.....	153
Principle of Operation.....	153
Cruise control	
See: Using Cruise Control.....	153
Cup Holders.....	117
Rear seat armrest.....	117

## D

Diesel Particulate Filter.....	123
Regeneration.....	124
Digital signal processing (DSP).....	265
Changing the DSP settings.....	265
DSP equalizer.....	265
DSP occupancy.....	265
Direction Indicators.....	53
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	28
Disabling the passenger airbag.....	29
Enabling the passenger airbag.....	29
Fitting the passenger airbag deactivation switch.....	29
Disarming the alarm.....	40
Vehicles with keyless entry.....	40
Vehicles without keyless entry.....	40
Dog Guard.....	175
Installing behind the front seats.....	175
Installing behind the rear seats.....	176
Door Edge Protection.....	38
Principle of Operation.....	38

DPF	
See: Diesel Particulate Filter.....	123
Driver Alert.....	161
Principle of Operation.....	161
Driving Aids.....	169
Driving Hints.....	184
Driving Through Water.....	184
Driving through water.....	184

## E

Eco Mode.....	128
Principle of Operation.....	128
Electromagnetic compatibility.....	308
Ending compact disc playback.....	269
End User License Agreement.....	309
SYNC® End User License Agreement (EULA).....	309
Engine Block Heater.....	124
Engine Coolant Check.....	210
Checking the coolant level.....	210
Topping up.....	210
Engine Oil Check.....	209
Checking the oil level.....	209
Topping up.....	209
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	209
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L Duratec-16V (Sigma).....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.6L	
EcoBoost™.....	208
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4).....	209
Engine Oil Dipstick - 2.0L	
EcoBoost™.....	208
Exterior Mirrors.....	67
Manual folding mirrors.....	67

## F

Fastening the safety belts.....	26
Fast forward/reverse.....	267
First Aid Kit.....	186
Flat Tire Inflation	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	219
Floor Mats.....	184

# Index

Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	51
Fog Lamps - Rear	
See: Rear Fog Lamps.....	52
Forward alert function.....	159
Adjusting the warning sensitivity.....	159
Switching the system on and off.....	159
Front Fog Lamps.....	51
Fuel and Refueling.....	129
Technical Specifications.....	133
Fuel Burning Heater	
See: Auxiliary Heater.....	103
Fuel Consumption.....	130
Fuel Consumption	
See: Technical Specifications.....	133
Fuel filler door.....	131
Refueling with a fuel can.....	132
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	129
Long-term storage.....	130
Fuel Quality - E85.....	129
Long-term storage.....	129
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	129
Fuel Shutoff.....	186
Ignition Switch.....	186
Keyless Starting.....	186
Fuse Box Locations.....	187
Engine compartment fuse box.....	187
Load compartment fuse box.....	187
Passenger compartment fuse box.....	187
Fuses.....	187
Fuse Specification Chart.....	188
Engine compartment fuse box.....	188
Load compartment fuse box.....	193
Passenger compartment fuse box.....	191
<b>G</b>	
Gauges.....	72
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	73
Fuel Gauge.....	74
Oil Pressure Gauge.....	74
Oil Temperature Gauge.....	74
Turbocharger Boost Gauge.....	74
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	30
Glasses Holder.....	117

Global Opening and Closing.....	66
Global Closing.....	67
Global Opening.....	66

## H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	138
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	55
Headlamp adjustment	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	55
Headlamp Leveling.....	52
Recommended headlamp leveling switch	
positions.....	52
Headlamp Washers.....	45
Head Restraints.....	108
Adjusting the head restraint.....	108
Removing the head restraints.....	109
Heated Seats.....	114
Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	103
Heated Exterior Mirrors.....	103
Heated Windows.....	103
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	98
Hill launch assist (HLA)	
See: Using hill start assist.....	141
Hill Start Assist.....	141
Principle of Operation.....	141
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock	
Brakes.....	138
HLA	
See: Hill Start Assist.....	141
See: Using hill start assist.....	141
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	198

## I

Ignition Switch.....	119
Important audio information.....	252
Audio unit labels.....	252
Disc labels.....	252
Information Displays.....	79
General Information.....	79

# Index

Information Messages.....	86	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	217
Active City Stop.....	86	To connect the booster cables.....	217
Airbag.....	86	To start the engine.....	218
Alarm.....	87		
Automatic Main Beam Control.....	87	<b>K</b>	
Battery and Charging System.....	87	Keyless Entry.....	35
Blind Spot Monitor.....	88	Disabled keys.....	36
Child Power Lock.....	88	General information.....	35
Climate Control.....	88	Locking and unlocking the doors with the key blade.....	37
Cruise Control and Adaptive Cruise Control.....	89	Locking the vehicle.....	35
Doors Open.....	89	Passive key.....	35
Driver Alert.....	89	Unlocking the vehicle.....	36
Engine Immobiliser.....	90	Keyless Starting.....	119
Hill Start Assist.....	90	Failure to start.....	120
Keyless Entry.....	90	Ignition on.....	120
Lane Keeping Aid.....	91	Starting a diesel engine.....	120
Lighting.....	91	Starting with automatic transmission.....	120
Maintenance.....	92	Starting with manual transmission.....	120
Message Indicator.....	86	Stopping the engine when the vehicle is moving.....	121
Occupant Protection.....	92	Stopping the engine with the vehicle stationary.....	121
Parking Aid.....	92	Keys and Remote Controls.....	30
Parking Brake.....	93		
Power Steering.....	93	<b>L</b>	
Stability Control.....	93	Lane Departure Warning.....	163
Starting the Engine.....	94	Principle of Operation.....	163
Start-Stop.....	95	Lane Keeping Aid.....	165
Transmission.....	96	Principle of Operation.....	165
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	97	Lighting Control.....	48
Instrument Cluster.....	72	Headlamp flasher.....	49
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	116	High and low beam.....	49
Interior Lamps.....	54	Home safe lighting.....	49
Interior lighting.....	54	Lighting control positions.....	48
Introduction.....	7	Parking lamps.....	48
ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	22	Lighting.....	48
Attaching a child seat with top tethers.....	22	General Information.....	48
Top tether anchor points - 4 door.....	22	Load Carriers	
Top tether anchor points - 5-door and wagon.....	22	See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	173
		Load Carrying.....	171
<b>J</b>		General Information.....	171
Jumper cables			
See: Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	217		
Jump starting			
See: Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	217		

# Index

Locking and Unlocking.....	33
Double locking.....	33
Locking.....	33
Locking and unlocking confirmation.....	34
Locking and unlocking the doors from inside.....	34
Locking the doors individually with the key.....	34
Luggage compartment lid.....	34
Unlocking.....	33
Locks.....	33
Luggage Anchor Points.....	171
Luggage Covers.....	172
3-door and 5-door.....	173
Wagon.....	173
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	225

## M

Maintenance.....	198
General Information.....	198
Technical Specifications.....	211
Manual Climate Control.....	99
Air conditioning.....	100
Air distribution control.....	99
Blower.....	100
Heating the interior quickly.....	100
Recirculated air.....	100
Ventilation.....	100
Manual Seats.....	109
Adjusting the angle of the seatback.....	110
Adjusting the height of the driver's seat.....	110
Adjusting the lumbar support.....	110
Moving the seats backwards and forwards.....	109
Manual Transmission.....	135
Selecting reverse gear.....	135
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	79
Mirrors	
See: Heated Windows and Mirrors.....	103
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	65
Moonroof	
See: Power moon roof.....	106
MP3 display options.....	268
CD text display options.....	269

MP3 file playback.....	268
Playing a multi session disc.....	268

## N

Navigation.....	243
Hazard Spot Warning.....	251
Information.....	248
Loading Map Data.....	243
Menu Structure.....	244
Navigation Map Updates.....	251
Road Safety.....	243
Route Options.....	246
Setting a Route.....	244
Setting Your Navigation Preferences.....	248
Type Approvals.....	251
News broadcasts.....	265

## O

Occupant protection.....	25
Principle of Operation.....	25
Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	209
On/off control.....	262
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	198
Closing the hood.....	199
Opening the hood.....	198

## P

Parking Aids.....	143
Principle of Operation.....	143
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Front and Rear Parking Aid.....	144
Maneuvering with the parking aid.....	145
Switching the parking aid on and off.....	144
Parking Aid - Vehicles With: Rear Parking Aid.....	143
Parking Brake.....	138
Personalized Settings.....	85
Chime deactivation.....	85
Language setting.....	85
Measure units.....	85
Temperature units.....	85
Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	33

# Index

Power exterior mirrors.....	68	Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	44
Mirror tilting positions.....	68	Intermittent wipe.....	44
Power folding mirrors.....	68	Rear window washer.....	45
Power moon roof.....	106	Reverse gear wipe.....	44
Moonroof anti-trap protection.....	107	Refueling - E85.....	130
Moonroof relearning.....	107	Refueling.....	130
Moonroof safety mode.....	107	Regional mode (REG).....	266
Opening and closing the moonroof.....	106	Removing a Headlamp.....	55
Opening and closing the moonroof automatically.....	106	Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	216
Tilting the moonroof.....	106	Repeat compact disc tracks.....	267
Power Seats - Vehicles With: 6-Way		Type 1.....	267
Power Seats.....	111	Type 2 and 3.....	267
Power Seats - Vehicles With: 8-Way		Replacement Parts	
Power Seats.....	112	Recommendation.....	9
Adjust the length of the seat cushion.....	113	Collision Repairs.....	9
Power Windows.....	65	Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	9
Anti-trap function.....	65	Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	10
Driver's door switches.....	65	Retractable tow ball.....	181
Global opening and closing.....	65	Driving with a trailer.....	183
Opening and closing the windows automatically.....	65	Fault conditions.....	182
Resetting the memory of the power windows.....	66	Maintenance.....	183
Safety switch for rear windows.....	65	Releasing the tow ball arm.....	181
Programming the remote control.....	30	Swiveling the tow ball arm in.....	182
Programming a new remote control.....	30	Swiveling the tow ball arm out.....	182
Reprogramming the unlocking function.....	30	Roadside Emergencies.....	186
		Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	173
		Installing the crossbars.....	174
		Roof rack.....	173
		Running-In	
		See: Breaking-In.....	184
<b>R</b>		<b>S</b>	
Rear Fog Lamps.....	52	Safety Belt Height Adjustment.....	27
Rear Seats.....	113	Safety Precautions.....	129
Folding the rear seatbacks forwards.....	113	Satellite Navigation Unit Holder.....	118
Folding the seatbacks up.....	114	Adjusting the holder.....	118
Folding the seat cushions and the rear seatbacks forwards.....	114	Seats.....	108
Rear view camera.....	147	Security code.....	261
Principle of Operation.....	147	Shuffle/random.....	267
Rear View Camera.....	147	Type 1.....	267
Activating the rear view camera.....	147	Type 2 and 3.....	267
Deactivating the rear view camera.....	149	Sitting in the Correct Position.....	108
Using the display.....	148		
Vehicles with parking aid.....	149		

# Index

Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	223
See: Using Snow Chains - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	224
Sound button.....	262
Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	153
Speed Limiter.....	160
Principle of Operation.....	160
Stability Control.....	139
Principle of Operation.....	139
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	119
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	123
Cold or hot engine.....	123
Starting a Gasoline Engine - E85.....	122
Starting at low ambient temperatures.....	122
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	121
Cold or hot engine.....	122
Engine idle speed after starting.....	122
Flooded engine.....	122
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	119
General Information.....	119
Station preset buttons.....	263
Station tuning control.....	262
DAB service linking.....	262
Manual tuning.....	262
Scan tuning.....	263
Seek tuning.....	262
Steering Wheel Lock.....	121
Steering Wheel Lock - Vehicles With:	
Push Button Start.....	121
Unlocking the Steering Wheel.....	121
Steering Wheel.....	41
Switching Off the Engine.....	124
Vehicles with a turbocharger.....	124
Symbols Glossary.....	7
SYNC™ Applications and	
Services.....	287
In the Event of a Crash.....	289
Switching Emergency Assistance On and Off.....	288
SYNC AppLink.....	290
SYNC Emergency Assistance.....	288
SYNC™.....	272
General Information.....	272
SYNC™ Troubleshooting.....	300
<b>T</b>	
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	238
Temporary Mobility Kit.....	219
Checking the tire pressure.....	222
General information.....	219
Inflating the tire.....	220
Using the kit.....	219
Tire Care.....	223
Tire Inflation When Punctured	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	219
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	224
System reset.....	225
Tire Repair Kit	
See: Temporary Mobility Kit.....	219
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	219
Tow Ball.....	178
Driving with a trailer.....	179
Driving without a trailer.....	180
Inserting the tow ball arm.....	179
Maintenance.....	180
Removing the tow ball arm.....	180
Unlocking the tow ball arm mechanism.....	178
Towing a Trailer - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	177
Trailer Lighting.....	178
When towing a trailer.....	177
Towing a Trailer - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	178
Towing Points.....	196
Installing the towing eye.....	196
Towing eye location.....	196
Towing the Vehicle on Four	
Wheels.....	196
All vehicles.....	196
Vehicles with automatic transmission.....	197
Towing.....	177
Track selection.....	267
Type 2 and 3.....	267

# Index

Traffic information control.....	263	Using Active City Stop - 2.0L	
Activating traffic announcements.....	263	EcoBoost™.....	168
Ending traffic announcements.....	264	Switching the system on and off.....	168
Traffic announcement volume.....	264	Using active park assist.....	150
Traffic Sign Recognition.....	169	Using Adaptive Cruise Control.....	157
Principle of Operation.....	169	Automatic deactivation.....	158
Using the System.....	169	Changing the set speed.....	157
Transmission.....	135	Setting a speed.....	157
Transmission		Setting the vehicle gap.....	157
See: Transmission.....	135	Switching the system off.....	158
Trip Computer.....	85	Switching the system on.....	157
Average fuel consumption.....	85	Temporarily deactivating the system.....	158
Average speed.....	85	Using Cruise Control.....	153
Digital Speedometer.....	85	Cancelling the set speed.....	154
Distance to empty.....	85	Changing the set speed.....	153
Instantaneous fuel consumption.....	85	Resuming the set speed.....	154
Odometer.....	85	Setting a speed.....	153
Outside air temperature.....	85	Switching cruise control off.....	154
Resetting the trip computer.....	85	Switching cruise control on.....	153
Trip Odometer.....	85	Using driver alert.....	161
Type approvals.....	324	Resetting the system.....	162
Certificate for United Arab Emirates.....	325	Switching the system on and off.....	161
EU Declaration.....	325	System display.....	162
FCC/INDUSTRY CANADA NOTICE.....	324	System warnings.....	161
Laser sensor.....	324	Using Eco mode.....	128
RX-42 - declaration of conformity.....	324	Resetting Eco mode.....	128
U		Using hill start assist.....	141
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L		Activating the system.....	141
EcoBoost™.....	200	Deactivating the system.....	141
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L		Vehicles with manual transmission	
Diesel.....	206	only.....	141
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L Duratec-16V		Using lane departure warning.....	163
(Sigma).....	201	Setting the steering wheel vibration	
Under Hood Overview - 1.6L		level.....	164
EcoBoost™.....	202	Setting the system sensitivity.....	164
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L		Switching the system on and off.....	163
Diesel.....	207	System warnings.....	164
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L Duratec-HE		Using safety belts during	
(MI4).....	204	pregnancy.....	28
Under Hood Overview - 2.0L		Using Snow Chains - 1.0L EcoBoost™/	
EcoBoost™.....	203	1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (MI4), 1.6L	
USB Port.....	117	Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	223
Using Active City Stop - 1.0L		Vehicles with stability control (ESP).....	224
EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE		Using Snow Chains - 2.0L	
(MI4), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	168	EcoBoost™.....	224
Switching the system on and off.....	168	Vehicles with stability control (ESP).....	224

# Index

Using Stability Control - 1.0L EcoBoost™/1.6L/2.0L Duratec-HE (M14), 1.6L Diesel/2.0L Diesel.....	140
Using Stability Control - 2.0L EcoBoost™.....	140
Switching sport mode on.....	140
Switching the system off.....	140
Using start-stop.....	126
To re-start the engine.....	127
To stop the engine.....	126
Using SYNC™ With Your Media Player.....	294
Accessing Your USB Song Library.....	299
Bluetooth Devices and System Settings.....	300
Connecting Your Media Player to the USB Port.....	294
Media Menu Features.....	298
Media Voice Commands.....	295
What's Playing?.....	295
Using SYNC™ With Your Phone.....	276
Accessing Features Through the Cell Phone Menu.....	281
Accessing Your Cell Phone Settings.....	283
Bluetooth Devices.....	285
Cell Phone Options During an Active Call.....	279
Cell Phone Voice Commands.....	277
Making a Call.....	278
Pairing a Cell Phone For the First Time.....	276
Pairing Subsequent Cell Phones.....	276
Receiving a Call.....	279
Text Messaging.....	282
Using the lane keeping aid.....	165
Switching the system on and off.....	165
System warnings.....	166
Using the speed limiter.....	160
Intentionally exceeding the set speed limit.....	160
Setting the speed limit.....	160
Switching the system on and off.....	160
System warnings.....	160
Using Voice Recognition.....	273
Helpful Hints.....	273
Initiating a Voice Session.....	274
System Interaction and Feedback.....	274
Using Winter Tires.....	223

## V

Vehicle battery.....	217
Vehicle Care.....	215
Vehicle Identification Number.....	237
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	236
Vehicle identification.....	236
Vehicle recovery.....	196
Ventilation See: Climate Control.....	98
Vents See: Air Vents.....	98
VIN See: Vehicle Identification Number.....	237
Voice Control.....	42

## W

Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	74
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	75
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	75
Blind Spot Monitor Indicator.....	75
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	75
Cruise Control Indicator.....	75
Direction Indicator.....	75
Engine Temperature Warning Lamp.....	75
Forward Alert Warning Indicator.....	75
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	75
Frost Warning Lamp.....	76
Glow Plug Indicator.....	76
Headlamp Indicator.....	76
High Beam Indicator.....	76
Ignition Warning Lamp.....	76
Lane Departure Warning Indicator.....	76
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	76
Low Tire Pressure Warning Indicator.....	76
Message Center Indicator.....	76
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	76
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	76
Safety Belt Minder Warning Lamp.....	76
Shift Indicator.....	77
Stability Control Indicator.....	77
Start-Stop Indicator.....	77
Warning Triangle.....	186
Washer Fluid Check.....	211

# Index

---

Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	215
See: Wipers and Washers.....	43
Waveband button.....	262
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	225
Wheels and Tires.....	219
General Information.....	219
Technical Specifications.....	231
Windows and Mirrors.....	65
Windshield Washers.....	44
Windshield Wipers.....	43
Automatic wiper system.....	43
Intermittent wipe.....	43
Winter Tires	
See: Using Winter Tires.....	223
Wipers and Washers.....	43





